

CENTRAL COLLINEATIONS OF FINITE PROJECTIVE PLANES

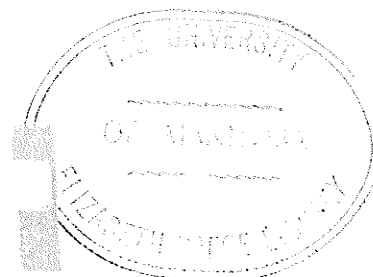
by

RUSSELL GRANT WOODS

A THESIS

PRESENTED TO THE  
FACULTY OF GRADUATE STUDIES AND RESEARCH  
OF THE  
UNIVERSITY OF MANITOBA  
IN PARTIAL FULFILLMENT  
OF THE REQUIREMENTS FOR THE DEGREE OF  
MASTER OF SCIENCE

APRIL 1965



## ABSTRACT

### CENTRAL COLLINEATIONS OF FINITE PROJECTIVE PLANES

by Russell Grant Woods

It is well-known that the structure of the finite projective plane is determined to a great extent by the structure of the collineation group of the plane. In this thesis certain assumptions are made concerning the nature of the action of the collineation group considered as a permutation group on the points and lines of the plane. Assumptions are also made concerning the number and nature of the central collineations that occur in the collineation group, and the way in which these assumptions determine the structure of the plane is investigated. The approach used is that employed in recent papers of Piper and Wagner. In order to carry out this investigation, a development of the elementary theory of the finite projective plane and of aspects of the theory of permutation groups is also given.

The writer wishes to express his thanks to Dr. W. J. Jonsson of the Department of Mathematics for his advice and helpfulness, to Mrs. Elaine Halliday for her patience during the typing of this thesis, and to the late Tom Lehrer, one of whose songs provided the basic idea of the thesis.

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	Page
INTRODUCTION . . . . .	i
FOREWORD . . . . .	iii
CHAPTER	
I ELEMENTARY PROPERTIES OF COLLINEATIONS .	1
II THE CO-ORDINATIZATION OF THE PROJECTIVE PLANE . . . . .	20
III THE THEORY OF FINITE ALTERNATIVE FIELDS.	50
IV GROUP THEORETICAL AND COMBINATORIAL THEOREMS . . . . .	71
V LOCALLY DESARGUESIAN PLANES . . . . .	106
BIBLIOGRAPHY . . . . .	162

## INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this thesis is to develop several recent results concerning the structure of the projective plane. It is shown that the structure of the plane can be deduced to a great extent from a knowledge of the structure of the collineation group of the plane, and more particularly from a knowledge of the properties of the central collineations of the plane.

The thesis is divided into five chapters. In the first chapter a number of elementary properties of central collineations are obtained. In the second chapter the method of co-ordinatizing the projective plane by means of a ternary ring is developed, and the important theorem that a projective plane is alternative if and only if its ternary ring is an alternative field is proved. The third chapter is devoted to a study of finite alternative fields, and it is shown that all finite alternative fields are commutative fields. This, coupled with the result of Chapter 2, yields the important result that all finite alternative planes are Desarguesian.

In the fourth chapter a number of combinatorial theorems, many relying heavily on the theory of permutation groups, are proved. In addition, a purely group-

theoretic result (theorem 4.1) is obtained. The results of Chapter 4 are used repeatedly in Chapter 5.

Chapter 5 is essentially a synthesis of the results of several recent papers of Wagner and Piper (10), (11), and (13). Certain conditions imposed on the collineation group of the projective plane are shown to be sufficient to ensure that the plane is Desarguesian; conditions under which the plane is a translation plane, or the dual of a translation plane, are also found. Thus the structure of the projective plane is shown to be determined to a great extent by the properties of the collineation group of the plane considered as a permutation group on the points and lines of the plane.

## FOREWORD

In the body of this thesis it is assumed that the reader is familiar with the terminology and notation of projective geometry, and with the basic properties of the projective plane. The purpose of this foreword is to summarize these basic properties and to define notation not defined elsewhere. The results quoted below can be found in Pickert (9) and in Hall (5).

A projective plane  $\pi$  is a triple  $(\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{L}, \varepsilon)$  consisting of a set  $\mathcal{P}$  whose elements are called points, a collection  $\mathcal{L}$  of distinguished subsets of  $\mathcal{P}$ , and the set-theoretic membership relation  $\varepsilon$  relating elements of  $\mathcal{P}$  and elements of  $\mathcal{L}$ . The elements of  $\mathcal{L}$  are called lines. If  $l$  is a line and  $P$  is a point, then " $P \varepsilon l$ " is defined to mean that  $P$  is a member of the distinguished subset  $l$  of  $\mathcal{P}$ . Geometrical language is used throughout; hence "P is on  $l$ ", "P belongs to  $l$ ", " $l$  is a line through P", " $l$  contains P", "P is incident with  $l$ ", and "P is a point of  $l$ ", are all phrases meaning " $P \varepsilon l$ ". If  $P_1, \dots, P_n$  are all on the same line  $l$ , then the points  $P_1, \dots, P_n$  are said to be collinear, and this is symbolized by writing  $\equiv P_1, \dots, P_n$ . Similarly, if lines  $l_1, \dots, l_n$

all pass through the same point  $P$ , then the lines  $l_1, \dots, l_n$  are said to be concurrent. On occasion the symbol  $\epsilon$  will be used in its more general sense of denoting set membership. The use of the symbol will always be clear from the context.

A projective plane  $\pi$  obeys the following axioms of incidence :

(1) If  $P_1 \in \mathcal{P}$ ,  $P_2 \in \mathcal{P}$ ,  $P_1 \neq P_2$ , then there exists exactly one line  $l \in \mathcal{L}$  such that  $P_1 \in l$ ,  $P_2 \in l$ .

(2) If  $l_1 \in \mathcal{L}$ ,  $l_2 \in \mathcal{L}$ ,  $l_1 \neq l_2$ , then there exists exactly one  $P \in \mathcal{P}$  such that  $P \in l_1$ ,  $P \in l_2$ .

(3) There exist four distinct points of  $\mathcal{P}$ , no three of which are collinear.

It immediately follows that there exist four distinct lines of  $\mathcal{L}$ , no three concurrent. Since a knowledge of two distinct points  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  on a line uniquely determines the line, we shall often denote by  $P_1P_2$  the (unique) line containing both  $P_1$  and  $P_2$ . Similarly, if  $l_1$  and  $l_2$  are distinct lines,  $l_1 \cap l_2$  will denote the unique point incident with each.

Suppose that the number of points of a projective plane  $\pi$  is finite (such a plane is called a finite projective plane). Then the following statements are shown to be equivalent:



- (1) One line contains exactly  $(n+1)$  points.
- (2) One point is on exactly  $(n+1)$  lines.
- (3) Every line contains exactly  $(n+1)$  points.
- (4) Every point is on exactly  $(n+1)$  lines.
- (5) There are exactly  $(n^2+n+1)$  points in  $\mathcal{P}$ .
- (6) There are exactly  $(n^2+n+1)$  lines in  $\mathcal{L}$ .

These equivalences will be used repeatedly. The order of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  will be said to be  $n$  if some line of  $\pi$  contains exactly  $(n+1)$  points.

Although the lines of  $\pi$  were defined to be distinguished subsets of the points of  $\pi$ , it is evident from the axioms of incidence that an equivalent characterization of the plane can be obtained by considering the lines to be the primitive elements and defining the points of  $\pi$  to be distinguished subsets of the lines of  $\pi$ ; thus a point could be considered to be the set of all lines passing through it. Consequently if the triple  $\pi = (\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{L}, \varepsilon)$  is a projective plane, the triple  $\pi^* = (\mathcal{L}, \mathcal{P}, \varepsilon^*)$  is also a projective plane where the binary relation  $\varepsilon$  is defined by

$$l \varepsilon^* P \iff P \varepsilon l \quad \text{for all } P \in \mathcal{P}, l \in \mathcal{L}.$$

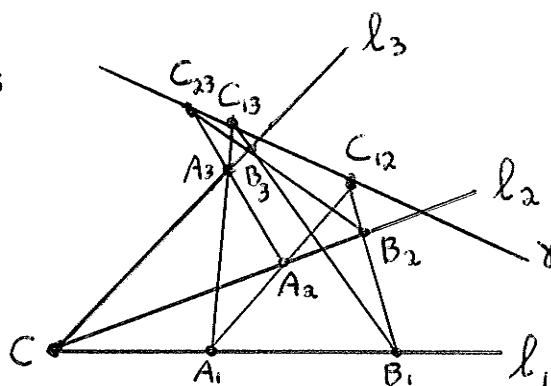
That  $\pi^*$  is indeed a projective plane can be verified by noting that  $\pi^*$  satisfies the axioms of incidence for a projective plane.  $\pi^*$  is called the projective plane dual to  $\pi$ . It is evident that  $(\pi^*)^* = \pi$ . Thus

every statement about a projective plane  $\pi$  can be "dualized" to a statement about  $\pi^*$  by interchanging the roles of points and lines and replacing  $\varepsilon$  by  $\varepsilon^*$ . It follows that if an assertion  $A$  is true of a projective plane  $\pi$ , the "dual" assertion  $A^*$  will be true of  $\pi^*$ . More generally, if all projective planes satisfying hypotheses  $H$  have property  $K$ , then all projective planes satisfying the dual hypotheses  $H^*$  will have the dual property  $K^*$ . This "principle of duality" will be used repeatedly throughout the thesis.

If  $\pi$  is a projective plane and  $\ell$  is a line of  $\pi$ , then by the affine plane  $\pi_\ell$  we shall mean the projective plane  $\pi$  with the line  $\ell$  and the points thereof deleted. The line  $\ell$  will be called the "line at infinity". Points not on  $\ell$  and lines distinct from  $\ell$  will be called affine points and lines. The concept of the affine plane will be used chiefly to facilitate notation and to aid in the co-ordinatization of the projective plane (see chapter II).

Let  $C$  be a point of  $\pi$  and  $\gamma$  a line of  $\pi$ . Let  $\ell_1, \ell_2, \ell_3$  be three arbitrary distinct lines through  $C$  (and  $\neq \gamma$ ) and let  $A_i$  and  $B_i$  be two distinct points of  $\ell_i - \{C\}$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ). If, for all such  $A_i, B_i$ , and  $\ell_i$ ,  $(A_1A_3 \cap B_1B_3) \varepsilon \gamma$  and  $(A_1A_2 \cap B_1B_2) \varepsilon \gamma$  together imply that  $(A_2A_3 \cap B_2B_3) \varepsilon \gamma$ , then we shall say that Desargues'

$(C, \gamma)$  theorem holds. If Desargues  $(C, \gamma)$  theorem holds for all points  $C$  and lines  $\gamma$  of  $\pi$ , then  $\pi$  will be said to be Desarguesian. The fundamental problem of this thesis will be to investigate what conditions determine the number of point-line pairs  $(C, \gamma)$  for which Desargues'  $(C, \gamma)$  theorem holds in a given projective plane.



The theory of groups, and in particular the theory of permutation groups, is used extensively throughout the thesis. A self-contained development of the theory of permutation groups appears in chapter IV, and several abstract group theoretical results are proved there as well. However, it is assumed that the reader is familiar with elementary abstract group theory, and with the standard notation employed in that subject. The results used can be found, for instance, in Hall (5).

Lemmas and theorems are numbered independently. Thus for example there is both a lemma 4.4 and a theorem 4.4, and these are distinct.

## CHAPTER I

### ELEMENTARY PROPERTIES OF COLLINEATIONS

In this chapter several elementary lemmas and theorems about collineations will be proved. Continual reference to these will be made throughout the rest of the paper.

Lemma 1.1 (i) The product of two collineations is a collineation.

(ii) The inverse of a collineation is a collineation.

Proof: (i) Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane with a point set  $\mathcal{P}$  and a line set  $\mathcal{L}$ . Let  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  be two collineations of  $\pi$ .

Define a mapping  $\sigma\tau$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} P \in \mathcal{P} &\implies P^{(\sigma\tau)} = (P^\sigma)^\tau \\ l \in \mathcal{L} &\implies l^{(\sigma\tau)} = (l^\sigma)^\tau. \end{aligned}$$

As  $\mathcal{P} \xrightarrow{\sigma} \mathcal{P}$ ,  $\mathcal{L} \xrightarrow{\sigma} \mathcal{L}$  are one-to-one onto mappings and as  $\tau$  is similarly one-to-one onto,  $\sigma\tau$  is a one-to-one onto mapping of  $\mathcal{P} \longrightarrow \mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{L} \longrightarrow \mathcal{L}$ .

To demonstrate that the mapping  $\sigma\tau$  preserves incidence, suppose that for  $P \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $l \in \mathcal{L}$ ,  $P \in l$ . Then  $P^\sigma \in l^\sigma$  (as  $\sigma$  is a collineation), and similarly  $(P^\sigma)^\tau \in (l^\sigma)^\tau$  (as  $\tau$  is a collineation). By definition of  $\sigma\tau$ , this implies that  $P^{(\sigma\tau)} \in l^{(\sigma\tau)}$ . Hence

$$P \in l \implies P^{(\sigma\tau)} \in l^{(\sigma\tau)};$$

thus  $\sigma$  preserves incidence and by definition is a collineation.

(ii) Let  $\sigma$  be a collineation of  $\pi$  projective plane  $\pi$ .

Define a mapping  $\mathcal{P} \xrightarrow{\sigma^{-1}} \mathcal{P}$  and  $\mathcal{L} \xrightarrow{\sigma^{-1}} \mathcal{L}$  by

$$P^{\sigma^{-1}} = Q \iff Q^{\sigma} = P \quad (P, Q \in \mathcal{P})$$

$$\ell^{\sigma^{-1}} = m \iff m^{\sigma} = \ell \quad (\ell, m \in \mathcal{L}).$$

Then  $\sigma^{-1}$  is a one-to-one onto mapping, since  $\sigma$  is.

In addition,  $\sigma^{-1}$  preserves incidence; for suppose that it did not. Then there exist  $P \in \mathcal{P}$  and  $\ell \in \mathcal{L}$  such that

$$P \in \ell \text{ but } P^{\sigma^{-1}} \notin \ell^{\sigma^{-1}}.$$

But as  $\sigma$  is a collineation, it preserves non-incidence; hence

$$(P^{\sigma^{-1}})^{\sigma} \notin (\ell^{\sigma^{-1}})^{\sigma};$$

$$P \notin \ell \quad (\text{from the definition of } \sigma^{-1}).$$

This contradicts the assumption that  $P \in \ell$ , and thus  $\sigma^{-1}$  is an incidence-preserving mapping and hence a collineation. It is the inverse of  $\sigma$  since by definition of  $\sigma^{-1}$ , the mappings  $\sigma\sigma^{-1}$  and  $\sigma^{-1}\sigma$  fix  $\pi$  elementwise.

**Corollary:** The set of all collineations of a projective plane  $\pi$  forms a group.

**Proof:** This follows from the theorem and from the associativity of mappings.

Definition: The trivial collineation (also called the identity collineation) is the collineation that fixes every point and line of the plane.

Lemma 1.2 Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane and  $\sigma$  a non-trivial collineation of  $\pi$ . Let there exist a line  $\ell \in \pi$  such that  $\sigma$  fixes every point on  $\ell$ . Then there exists a point  $A \in \pi$  such that  $\sigma$  fixes every line through  $A$ .

Proof: Pick an arbitrary point  $P \in \pi$  such that  $P \notin \ell$ , and consider the point  $P^\sigma$ . Then  $P^\sigma \notin \ell$ ; for otherwise  $(P^\sigma)^\sigma = P^\sigma$ , and application of  $\sigma^{-1}$  gives  $P^\sigma = P$ , which implies that  $P \in \ell$ , contrary to hypothesis. There are now two cases:

(i)  $P^\sigma \neq P$ . Then  $PP^\sigma \cap \ell$  is a well-defined point which we will denote as  $Q$ .

Now

$$\equiv P, P^\sigma, Q;$$

thus

$$\begin{aligned} (PQ)^\sigma &= P^\sigma Q^\sigma = P^\sigma Q \quad (\text{as } Q \in \ell) \\ &= PQ \end{aligned}$$

and thus the line  $PQ$  is fixed by  $\sigma$ .

Pick an arbitrary point  $R$ ,  $R \notin \ell$ ,  $R \notin PQ$ , and consider the line  $RR^\sigma$  (assuming that  $R \neq R^\sigma$ ). It too is fixed by  $\sigma$ , by the above argument; thus the point

$$RR^\sigma \cap PP^\sigma \text{ is also fixed by } \sigma.$$

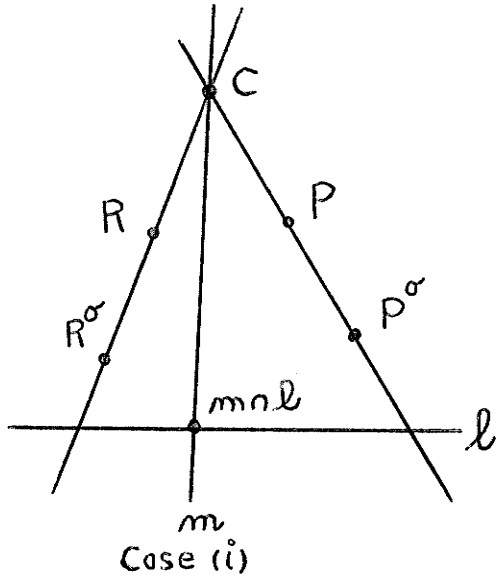
Let

$$RR^\sigma \cap PP^\sigma = C.$$

(ii)  $P^\sigma = P$  (or  $R^\sigma = R$ ). In this case sub-

stitute  $P$  (or  $R$ ) in place of  $C$  in the following argument.

Again there are two cases; either  $C \notin \ell$  or  $C \in \ell$ .



(i) Suppose  $C \notin \ell$ . Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $C$ . Then  $m \cap \ell \neq C$ , and we have

$$m = (m \cap \ell)C.$$

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} m^\sigma &= [(m \cap \ell)C]^\sigma = (m \cap \ell)^\sigma C^\sigma \\ &= (m \cap \ell)C \\ &= m. \end{aligned}$$

Thus all lines through  $C$  are fixed by  $\sigma$ , and  $C$  is the desired point  $A$ .

(ii) Suppose  $C \in \ell$ . Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $C$  and let  $S$  be a point on  $m$  ( $S \neq C$ ). Then  $S^\sigma \in m^\sigma$ , and by the argument used above,  $SS^\sigma$  is fixed by  $\sigma$ . Hence if  $S^\sigma \in m$ , we have

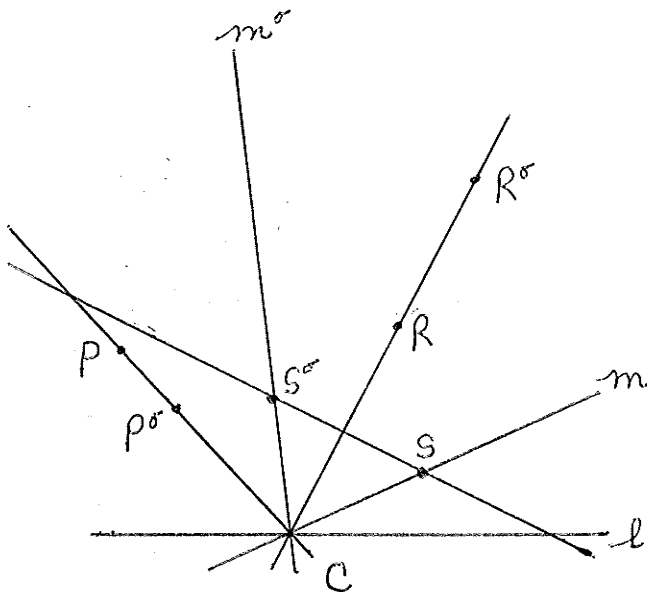
$$m = CS$$

$$\begin{aligned} m^\sigma &= C^\sigma S^\sigma = CS^\sigma = m \quad (\text{as } \ell^\sigma = \ell, \text{ and if } \\ &\quad m \neq \ell, S \notin \ell \text{ implies } \\ &\quad S^\sigma \notin \ell) \end{aligned}$$

and  $m$  is fixed by  $\sigma$ . If  $S^\sigma \notin m$ , then  $SS^\sigma \neq m$  and  $SS^\sigma \notin m^\sigma$ .

Thus

$$SS^\sigma \cap PP^\sigma \neq SS^\sigma \cap RR^\sigma \quad (\text{see diagram})$$



and so  $SS^\sigma \cap PP^\sigma$  and  $SS^\sigma \cap RR^\sigma$  are distinct points  $\notin l$  and fixed by  $\sigma$ . By the argument of case (i), it follows that all lines through each point are fixed, and thus  $\sigma$  fixes all points and lines of  $\pi$ . This contra-

dicts the assumption that  $\sigma$  is non-trivial; hence  $S^\sigma \notin m$  is impossible and all lines through  $C$  are fixed.

The dual of this theorem is also true:

Corollary: If  $\sigma$  is a collineation of  $\pi$  and  $P$  a point of  $\pi$  such that  $\sigma$  fixes all lines through  $P$ , then there exists a line  $l$  of  $\pi$  such that  $\sigma$  fixes all points on  $l$ .

Definition: A collineation  $\sigma$  that fixes all points on the line  $l$  and all lines through the point  $C$  is called a  $(C, l)$ -collineation, or a central collineation.  $l$  is called the axis of the collineation, and  $C$  is called its centre.

If  $C \in l$ , then  $\sigma$  is called a  $(C, l)$ -elation; if  $C \notin l$ , then  $\sigma$  is called a  $(C, l)$ -homology.

Lemma 1.3 A  $(C, l)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  that fixes a point  $P$ ,  $P \neq C$  and  $P \notin l$ , is the identity collineation.

Proof: Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $P$ . Then  $m$  is of the form  $PQ$ , where  $Q = m \cap l$  and hence  $Q \neq P$ . Thus



$$m^\sigma = (PQ)^\sigma = P^\sigma Q^\sigma = PQ$$

since  $P$  and  $Q$  are both fixed points of  $\sigma$ . The two distinct points  $P$  and  $C$  then have the property that a line through either of them is fixed. Let  $R$  be

a point not on  $CP$ . Then

$$R = PR \cap CR \text{ and}$$

$$R^\sigma = (PR \cap CR)^\sigma = PR \cap CR = R.$$

Thus all points of the plane not on  $CP$  are fixed by  $\sigma$ . A similar argument in which  $P$  is replaced by  $\bar{P}$ , where

$\bar{P} \notin CP$ ,  $\bar{P} \in \ell$ , shows that all points on  $CP$  are fixed by  $\sigma$ .

Hence  $\sigma$  fixes all points of the plane, and as it preserves incidence, it fixes all lines of the plane.

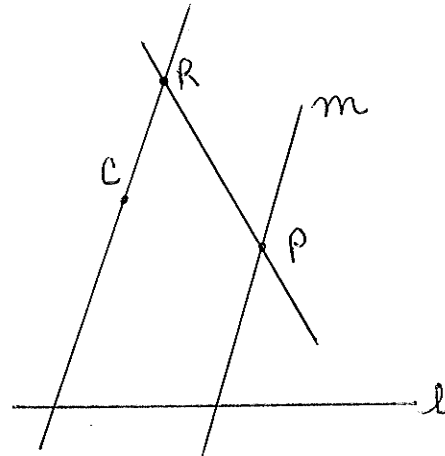
Hence  $\sigma = 1$ .

By the principle of duality, we have the

Corollary A  $(C, \ell)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  that fixes a line  $m$ ,  $m \neq \ell$  and  $C \notin m$ , is the identity collineation.

Lemma 1.4 A  $(C, \ell)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  is determined by the image under  $\sigma$  of a point  $P$  (or, by the principle of duality, a line  $m$ ) if  $P \neq C$  and  $P \notin \ell$  (dually,  $m \neq \ell$  and  $C \notin m$ ).

Proof: Let  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  be two  $(C, \ell)$ -collineations. By lemma 1,  $\sigma_1 \sigma_2^{-1}$  is also a  $(C, \ell)$ -collineation.



Let  $P$  be a point such that  $P^{\sigma_1} = P^{\sigma_2}$  ( $P \neq C$ ,  $P \notin \ell$ ).

Then

$$P^{\sigma_1\sigma_2^{-1}} = P,$$

and by the previous lemma,  $\sigma_1\sigma_2^{-1} = 1$ .

As inverses are unique, this means that  $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2$ , which proves the lemma.

Lemma 1.5 Let  $\sigma_1$  be a  $(C_1, \ell)$ -relation and  $\sigma_2$  a  $(C_2, \ell)$ -relation. Then either one of the following occurs:

(i)  $C_1 = C_2$  and  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  is a  $(C_1, \ell)$ -relation.

(ii)  $C_1 \neq C_2$  and  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  is a  $(C_3, \ell)$ -relation

for some point  $C_3$  with  $C_1 \neq C_3 \neq C_2$ .

Proof: (i) If  $P$  is a point and  $m$  a line such that  $P \in \ell$  and  $C \in m$ , then

$$P^{\sigma_1} = P = P^{\sigma_2}, \quad m^{\sigma_1} = m = m^{\sigma_2};$$

hence  $P^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} = P$  and  $m^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} = m$ . Thus  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  is a  $(C_1, \ell)$ -relation.

(ii) As both  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  fix each point on  $\ell$ ,  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  does. Hence by lemma 2, there exists a point  $C_3$  such that  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  fixes all lines through  $C_3$ . In order to prove that  $C_3 \in \ell$ , it suffices to show that  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  fixes no point of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ . If  $P \notin \ell$  and  $P^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} = P$ , then  $P^{\sigma_1} = P^{\sigma_2^{-1}}$ . But  $\sigma_2^{-1}$  is evidently a  $(C_2, \ell)$ -collineation, so  $P^{\sigma_1} \in C_1P$  and  $P^{\sigma_1} \in C_2P$ . Thus as  $\neq C_1, C_2, P$ , it follows that  $P^{\sigma_1} = P^{\sigma_2^{-1}} = P$ ; thus both  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  are trivial (i.e. are the identity collineation) by lemma 3, contrary to hypothesis. Hence  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  fixes only points on ,

and is thus an elation.

If  $C_3 = C_1$ , then  $\sigma_2 = \sigma_1^{-1}(\sigma_1\sigma_2)$  is a  $(C_1, \ell)$ -elation (by case (i)), contradicting the hypothesis that  $C_1 \neq C_2$ . Thus  $C_1 \neq C_3 \neq C_2$ .

Corollary I: The set of all  $(C_1, \ell)$ -elations forms a group, provided that the identity collineation is counted as a  $(C, \ell)$ -elation for all point-line pairs  $(C, \ell)$ .

Corollary II: The set of all elations with a given axis  $\ell$  forms a group, provided that the identity collineation is considered to be such an elation.

Definition: A projective plane  $\pi$  is said to be  $(C, \ell)$ -transitive if, for arbitrary points  $P, Q \notin \ell$  such that  $\equiv P, Q, C$ , and  $P \neq C \neq Q$  there is a  $(C, \ell)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  such that  $P^\sigma = Q$ .

Lemma 1.6 Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane that is  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitive, and let  $\sigma$  be a  $(C, \gamma)$ -collineation and  $\varphi$  an arbitrary collineation. Then  $\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi$  is a  $(C^\varphi, \gamma^\varphi)$ -collineation and  $\pi$  is  $(C^\varphi, \gamma^\varphi)$ -transitive.

Proof: Let  $P \in \gamma^\varphi$ ; then  $P^{\varphi^{-1}} \in \gamma$ , and  $P^{\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi} = \gamma$  (as  $\sigma$  is a  $(C, \gamma)$ -collineation). Hence  $P^{\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi} \in \gamma^\varphi$ . But as  $P^{\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi} \in \gamma^\varphi$ ,  $P^{\varphi^{-1}\sigma} = P^{\varphi^{-1}}$  as  $\sigma$  fixes points on  $\gamma$ . Hence  $P^{\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi} = P^{\varphi^{-1}} = P$ , i.e.  $\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi$  fixes points on  $\gamma^\varphi$ . The dual argument gives that  $\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi$  fixes all lines through  $C^\varphi$ , and hence  $\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi$  is a  $(C^\varphi, \gamma^\varphi)$ -collineation.

Pick distinct points A and B in the plane,

arbitrary except that  $\equiv A, B, C^\varphi$ ,  $A \neq C^\varphi$ ,  $B \neq C^\varphi$ , and  $A, B \notin \varphi$ . As  $\varphi^{-1}$  is a collineation, this means that  $\equiv A^{\varphi^{-1}}, B^{\varphi^{-1}}, C$ . As the plane is  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitive, there exists a  $(C, \gamma)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  such that  $(A^{\varphi^{-1}})^\sigma = B^{\varphi^{-1}}$ .  $\therefore A^{\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi} = B^{\varphi^{-1}\varphi} = B$ . But  $\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi$  is a  $(C^\varphi, \gamma^\varphi)$ -collineation; hence, as  $A$  and  $B$  were arbitrary, the plane is  $(C^\varphi, \gamma^\varphi)$ -transitive.

Definition: (a) A projective plane  $\pi$  is said to be a translation plane with respect to the line  $\ell$  if  $\pi$  is  $(C, \ell)$ -transitive for all points  $C$  on  $\ell$ .

(b) The projective plane  $\pi$  is said to be the dual of a translation plane with respect to the point  $P$  if  $\pi$  is  $(P, \ell)$ -transitive for all lines through  $P$ .

(c) If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to a line  $\ell$ , then the group of all elations with axis  $\ell$  is called the translation group of  $\pi$ .

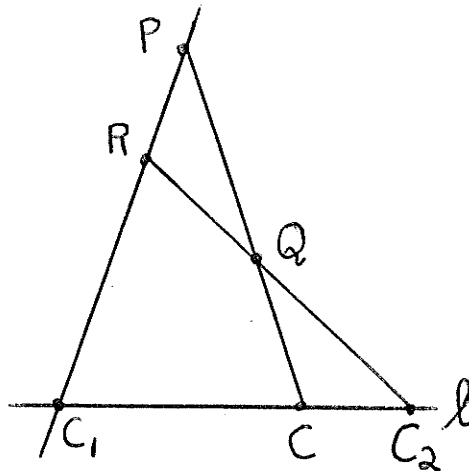
Lemma 1.7 Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane containing a line  $\ell$  and distinct points  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  on  $\ell$ . If  $\pi$  is  $(C_1, \ell)$ - and  $(C_2, \ell)$ -transitive, then it is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Proof: Let  $C$  be an arbitrary point on  $\ell$ ,  $C_1 \neq C \neq C_2$ .

Let  $P$  and  $Q$  be arbitrary points of  $\pi$  such that

$\equiv P, Q, C$  and  $P, Q \notin \ell$ . As  $C_1 \neq C_2$ , the point  $C_1P \cap C_2Q$  is well-defined; denote it by  $R$ .

As  $\pi$  is  $(C_1, \ell)$ -transitive and as  $\equiv P, R, C_1$ , there exists a  $(C_1, \ell)$ -relation  $\sigma_1$  such that  $P^{\sigma_1} = R$ . Similarly there exists a  $(C_2, \ell)$ -relation  $\sigma_2$  such that  $R^{\sigma_2} = Q$ . Hence  $P^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} = Q$ . But by lemma 1.5,  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  is a  $(C, \ell)$ -relation, and evidently it maps  $P$  onto  $Q$ . Hence as  $C$  was arbitrary in  $\pi$ , and as  $P$  and  $Q$  were arbitrary points satisfying  $\equiv P, Q, C$ , it follows that  $\pi$  is  $(C, \ell)$ -transitive for all  $C \in \ell$ . Hence  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .



**Lemma 1.8** Let  $\pi$  be a translation plane with respect to the line  $\ell$ . If  $\alpha$  is a collineation then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell^\alpha$ .

**Proof:** Let  $C$  be an arbitrary point of  $\ell^\alpha$ . Then there exists a point  $\bar{C} \in \ell$  such that  $\bar{C}^\alpha = C$ . As  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ ,  $\pi$  is  $(\bar{C}, \ell)$ -transitive. Then by lemma 1.6,  $\pi$  is  $(\bar{C}^\alpha, \ell^\alpha)$ -transitive, i.e.  $(C, \ell^\alpha)$ -transitive. As  $C$  was arbitrary on  $\ell^\alpha$ ,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell^\alpha$ .

**Corollary:** If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to two lines  $\ell_1$  and  $\ell_2$  intersecting at a point  $P$ , then it

is a translation plane with respect to every line of the plane that passes through  $P$ .

Proof: Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $P$  ( $l_1 \neq m$ ).

As  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $l_1$ , there is a  $(C, l_1)$ -elation  $\sigma$  ( $C \neq P$ ) such that  $l_2^\sigma = m$ .

By lemma 1.8, since  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $l_2$ , it is also a translation plane with respect to  $m$ .

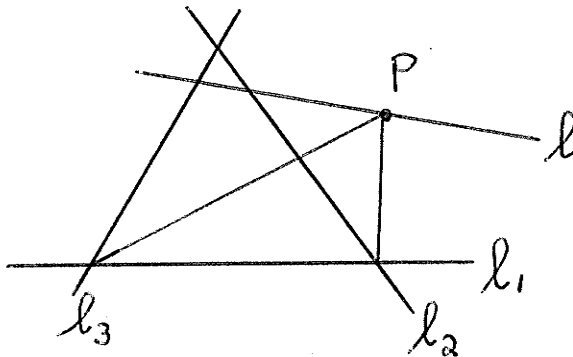
As  $m$  was arbitrary,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $P$ .

Definition: An alternative plane  $\pi$  is a projective plane that is a translation plane with respect to every line of the plane.

Lemma 1.9 If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to three non-concurrent lines  $l_1, l_2, l_3$ , then it is an alternative plane.

Proof: Let  $l$  be an arbitrary line of  $\pi$ . If  $l$  passes through any of  $l_1 \cap l_2, l_1 \cap l_3, l_2 \cap l_3$ , then by the corollary of lemma 1.8,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $l$ . If  $l$  passes through none of these, choose an arbitrary point  $P \in l$ , and without loss of generality, assume  $P \notin l_1$ .

Then as above,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to the distinct lines  $(l_1 \cap l_2)P$  and



$(\ell_1 \cap \ell_3)P$ . Thus it is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $P$ , and in particular  $\ell$ . As  $\ell$  was arbitrary,  $\pi$  must be an alternative plane.

**Theorem 1.1** Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane and let  $\ell$  be a line of  $\pi$ . Let there exist non-trivial elations  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  with axis  $\ell$  and with centres  $C_1$  and  $C_2$ ,  $C_1 \neq C_2$ . Then  $G(\ell)$ , the group of all elations with axis  $\ell$ , is either infinite abelian or elementary abelian.

**Proof:** We first prove that  $G(\ell)$  is abelian. By lemma 4, it suffices to show that for an arbitrary point  $A \notin \ell$ ,  $A^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2} = A^{\sigma_2 \sigma_1}$ .

Since  $\sigma_2$  fixes all lines through  $C_2$ ,

$$(A^{\sigma_1} C_2)^{\sigma_2} = A^{\sigma_1} C_2$$

$$\text{But } (A^{\sigma_1} C_2)^{\sigma_2} = A^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2} C_2$$

$$\text{and so } \equiv A^{\sigma_1}, A^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2}, C_2.$$

$$\text{However, } \equiv A^{\sigma_1}, A, C_1$$

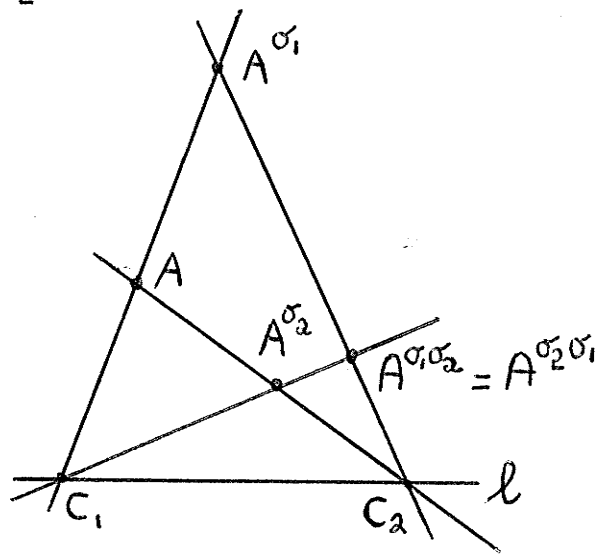
$$\text{and hence } \equiv A^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2}, A^{\sigma_2}, C_1.$$

Thus as  $A^{\sigma_2} C_1 \neq A^{\sigma_1} C_2$  (as  $C_1 \neq C_2$ ), it follows that

$$A^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2} = C_1 A^{\sigma_2} \cap C_2 A^{\sigma_1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Analogously } A^{\sigma_2 \sigma_1} &= C_2 A^{\sigma_1} \cap C_1 A^{\sigma_2} \\ &= A^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2}. \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $\sigma_1 \sigma_2 = \sigma_2 \sigma_1$ . Evidently by the same argument, any two elations with distinct centres and the same axis  $\ell$  will commute. Further, two distinct elations of



$G(\mathcal{L})$  with the same centre will commute; for let  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_1^*$  be  $(C_1, \mathcal{L})$ -elations. Then by lemma 5,  $\sigma_1^* \sigma_2$  and  $\sigma_1 \sigma_2$  have centres  $\neq C_1, C_2$ ; thus by the above

$$\begin{aligned}\sigma_2(\sigma_1 \sigma_1^*) &= (\sigma_1 \sigma_1^*) \sigma_2 = \sigma_1(\sigma_1^* \sigma_2) \\ &= (\sigma_1^* \sigma_2) \sigma_1 = (\sigma_2 \sigma_1^*) \sigma_1 \\ &= \sigma_2(\sigma_1^* \sigma_1).\end{aligned}$$

Multiplying on the left by  $\sigma_2^{-1}$ ,

$$\sigma_1 \sigma_1^* = \sigma_1^* \sigma_1.$$

Thus  $G(\mathcal{L})$  is abelian as claimed.

If  $G(\mathcal{L})$  has an element of finite order, then it has an element  $\sigma_1$  with centre  $C_1$  of prime order  $p$ . If  $\sigma_2$  is an arbitrary non-trivial element of  $G(\mathcal{L})$  with centre  $C_2 \neq C_1$ , then

$$\begin{aligned}(\sigma_1 \sigma_2)^p &= \sigma_1^p \sigma_2^p \quad (\text{as } G(\mathcal{L}) \text{ is abelian}) \\ &= \sigma_2^p.\end{aligned}$$

As any power of an elation has the same centre as the elation,  $(\sigma_1 \sigma_2)^p$  has centre  $C_2$ , as  $\sigma_2^p$  has. This contradicts lemma 5 unless  $(\sigma_1 \sigma_2)^p = 1$ , i.e. unless

$$\sigma_2^p = 1.$$

Thus all elations of  $G(\mathcal{L})$  with centre  $\neq C_1$ , are of order  $p$ . By extension of the above argument with  $\sigma_2$  playing the role of  $\sigma_1$ , all elations with centre  $C_1$  are of order  $p$  as well. Hence  $G(\mathcal{L})$  is an elementary abelian group.

By the principle of duality we obtain the following



Corollary: Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane and  $P$  a point of  $\pi$ . Let there exist non-trivial elations  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  with centre  $P$  and axes  $l_1$  and  $l_2$ ,  $l_1 \neq l_2$ . Then  $G(P)$ , the group of all elations with centre  $P$ , is either infinite abelian or elementary abelian.

Definition: An involution is a  $(C, l)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  such that  $\sigma \neq 1$  but  $\sigma^2 = 1$ . If  $\sigma$  is an elation (homology) of order 2, it is said to be an involutory elation (homology).

Theorem 1.2 Let  $\sigma$  be an involution of a projective plane  $\pi$  of order  $n$ . Then if  $n$  is even,  $\sigma$  is an elation; if  $n$  is odd,  $\sigma$  is a homology.

Proof: Let  $\sigma$  have axis  $l$  and centre  $C$ , and let  $m$  be any line  $\neq l$  such that  $C \in m$ . Then  $\sigma$  interchanges points of  $m - \{C \cup (m \cap l)\}$  in pairs; thus  $m - \{C \cup (m \cap l)\}$ , considered as a point set, has an even number of points. If  $\sigma$  is an elation, then  $C = m \cap l$  and  $m - \{C \cup (m \cap l)\}$  contains  $n$  points; hence  $n$  is even. If  $\sigma$  is a homology, then  $C \neq m \cap l$  and  $m - \{C \cup (m \cap l)\}$  contains  $n-1$  points. Thus  $n-1$  is even, i.e.  $n$  is odd.

Theorem 1.3 Desargues'  $(C, \gamma)$  theorem holds in a projective plane if and only if the plane is  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitive.

Proof: First suppose that for a particular line  $\gamma$  and point  $C$  the plane is  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitive. Let

$C, A_1, A_2, A_3, B_1, B_2, B_3$  be seven distinct points such that  $\equiv C, A_1, B_1, \equiv C, A_2, B_2$ , and  $\equiv C, A_3, B_3$ . Suppose that  $C_{12} = A_1A_2 \cap B_1B_2 \in \gamma$  and that  $C_{13} = A_1A_3 \cap B_1B_3 \in \gamma$ . It must be shown that  $C_{23} = A_2A_3 \cap B_2B_3$  also lies on  $\gamma$ .

From the above conditions it follows that  $\gamma$  does not pass through  $A_i$  or  $B_i$  ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ), so as there exists  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitivity, there exists a  $(C, \gamma)$ -collineation  $\sigma$  such that  $A_1^\sigma = B_1$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } A_2^\sigma &= (C_{12}A_1 \cap CA_2)^\sigma \\ &= C_{12}^\sigma A_1^\sigma \cap CA_2 \\ &= C_{12}^\sigma B_1 \cap CA_2 = B_2 \end{aligned}$$

A similar argument shows

$$\text{that } A_3^\sigma = B_3.$$

Thus

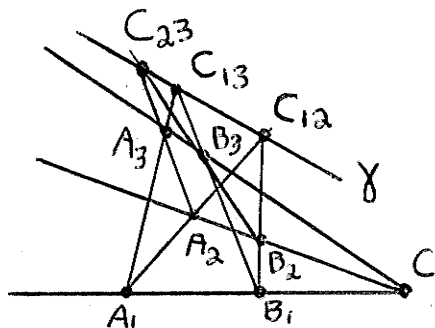
$$A_2A_3 \cap \gamma = (A_2A_3 \cap \gamma)^\sigma = A_2^\sigma A_3^\sigma \cap \gamma = B_2B_3 \cap \gamma.$$

Hence  $A_2A_3 \cap B_2B_3 \in \gamma$ , and Desargues'  $(C, \gamma)$  theorem holds.

Conversely, assume that Desargues'  $(C, \gamma)$  theorem holds for a particular point-line pair  $C$  and  $\gamma$ . Let  $A_1$  and  $B_1$  be any pair of distinct points  $\neq C$  and not on  $\gamma$  such that  $\equiv A_1, B_1, C$ . Construct a mapping  $\sigma$ , defined on the affine plane (obtained by considering  $CA_1B_1$  to be the line at infinity) as follows:

$$A_1^\sigma = B_1$$

$$C^\sigma = C$$



$$P \in \gamma \Rightarrow P^\sigma = P$$

$$P \notin \gamma, P \notin A_1 C, \implies P^\sigma = CP \cap ((A_1 P \cap \gamma) B_1).$$

It will now be shown that the mapping  $\sigma$  preserves incidence in the affine plane, i.e. that  $P \notin CA_1, P \in \ell, \implies P^\sigma \in \ell^\sigma$ . This will imply that  $\sigma$  maps parallel classes of lines into parallel classes of lines, and hence that a point on  $CA_1$  is mapped into another point on  $CA_1$ . Hence  $\sigma$  will be shown to be an incidence-preserving mapping, and in fact to be a  $(C, \gamma)$ -collineation sending  $A_1 \rightarrow B_1$ . Thus as  $A_1$  and  $B_1$  were arbitrary as described above, the plane will be shown to be  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitive.

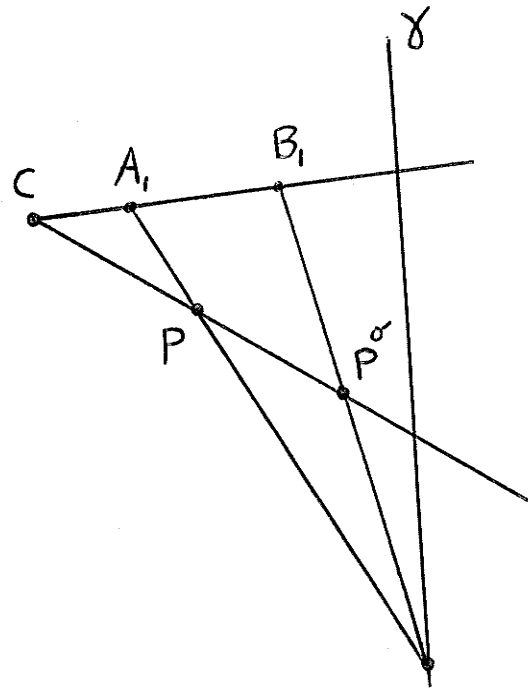
Let  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  be two distinct points not in  $\{\gamma \cup C\}$ . Let  $R = P_1 P_2 \cap \gamma$ .

If  $\equiv C, P_1, P_2$  then by definition of  $\sigma$  both  $P_1^\sigma$  and  $P_2^\sigma$  are on  $CR$ , i.e.

$$\equiv C, P_1^\sigma, P_2^\sigma, R,$$

and thus

$$\equiv P_1, P_2, R \implies \equiv P_1^\sigma, P_2^\sigma, R.$$



If  $\not\equiv C, P_1, P_2$ , construct  $P_1^\sigma$  and  $P_2^\sigma$  and apply Desargues  $(C, \gamma)$  theorem; as  $AP_1 \cap BP_1^\sigma \in \gamma$  and  $AP_2 \cap BP_2^\sigma \in \gamma$ , it follows that  $P_1^\sigma P_2^\sigma \cap P_1 P_2 \in \gamma$ ,

i.e. that

$$\equiv P_1^\sigma, P_2^\sigma, R.$$

Hence in general

$$\equiv P_1, P_2, R \Rightarrow \equiv P_1^\sigma, P_2^\sigma, R^\sigma.$$

Thus suppose that  $A, B, D$  are arbitrary distinct collinear points not  $= C$  nor on  $\gamma$ .

Let  $ABD \cap \gamma = R$ .

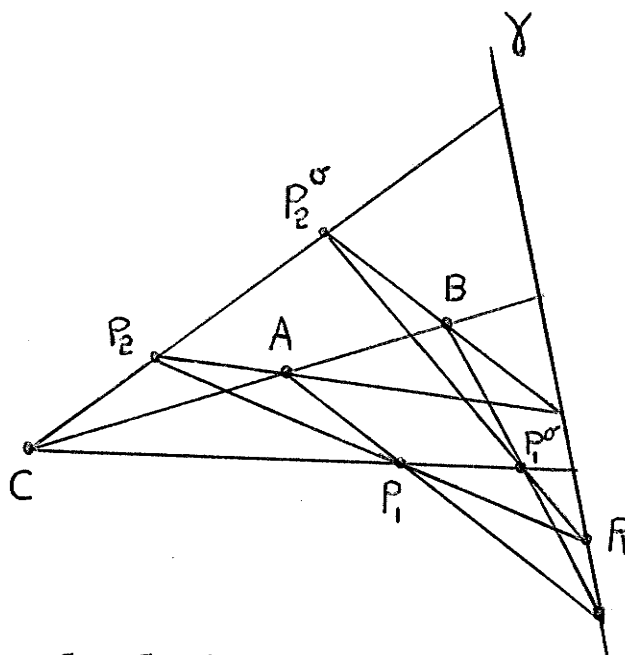
Thus  $\equiv A, B, R$  and  $\equiv B, D, R$ . Hence by the above work,

$\equiv A^\sigma, B^\sigma, R$  and  $\equiv B^\sigma, D^\sigma, R$ , so  $\equiv A^\sigma, B^\sigma, D^\sigma$ . Hence  $\sigma$

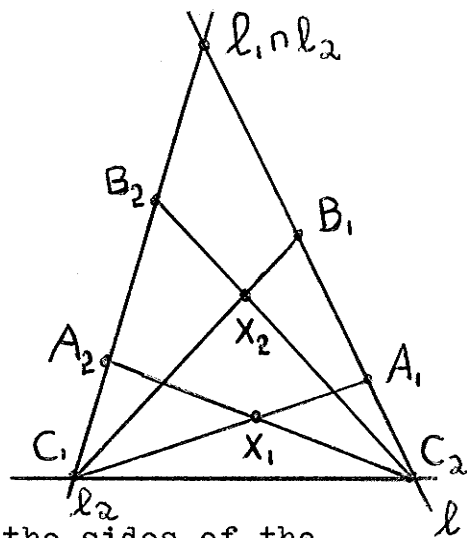
preserves incidence and hence is a collineation; it follows, as remarked earlier, that the plane is  $(C, \gamma)$ -transitive.

**Lemma 1.10** (See Ostrom (6), lemma 6.) Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane and let  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  be two involutory homologies of  $\pi$  with centres  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  respectively and axes  $l_1$  and  $l_2$  respectively. If  $C_1 \in l_2$  and  $C_2 \in l_1$ , then  $\sigma_1 \sigma_2$  is an involutory homology with centre  $l_1 \cap l_2$  and axis  $C_1 C_2$ .

**Proof:** As the points  $C_1, C_2$ , and  $l_1 \cap l_2$  are fixed by



both  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ , they are fixed by  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ . Similarly the lines  $\ell_1, \ell_2$ , and  $C_1 \cap C_2$  are fixed by  $\sigma_1, \sigma_2$ , and  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ . Let  $A_1$  and  $B_1$  be two points of  $\ell_1$  interchanged by  $\sigma_2$  (as  $\sigma_2^2 = 1$ , points of  $\pi$  are either fixed by  $\sigma_2$  or are interchanged in pairs). Since  $\sigma_1$  fixes all points on  $\ell_1$ ,  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  also interchanges  $A_1$  and  $B_1$ . Similarly, if  $\sigma_1$  interchanges  $A_2$  and  $B_2$  on  $\ell_2$ , then  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  interchanges these also. Thus points on  $\ell_1$  and  $\ell_2$  (with the exception of  $C_1, C_2$ , and  $\ell_1 \cap \ell_2$ ) are interchanged in pairs by  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ .



Let  $X_1$  be any point not on the sides of the triangle  $C_1C_2(\ell_1 \cap \ell_2)$ . Let  $C_1X_1 \cap \ell_1 = A_1$  and  $C_2X_1 \cap \ell_2 = A_2$ . Let  $A_1 \leftrightarrow B_1$  and  $A_2 \leftrightarrow B_2$  under  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ . Then if  $C_1B_1 \cap C_2B_2 = X_2$ , evidently  $X_1 \leftrightarrow X_2$  under  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ . Thus all points of  $\pi$  are either fixed or interchanged in pairs by  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ , so  $(\sigma_1\sigma_2)^2 = 1$ .

Let  $X_1X_2 \cap C_1C_2 = R$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } (X_1X_2 \cap C_1C_2)^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} &= (X_1X_2)^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} \cap (C_1C_2)^{\sigma_1\sigma_2} \\ &= X_1X_2 \cap C_1C_2 = R \end{aligned}$$

as  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  fixes the line  $X_1X_2$  (as it interchanges  $X_1$  and  $X_2$ ) and the line  $C_1C_2$  (as both  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  do). Thus all points on  $C_1C_2$ , and dually all lines through  $\ell_1 \cap \ell_2$ ,

are fixed by  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$ . Hence  $\sigma_1\sigma_2$  is an involutory homology with centre  $\ell_1 \cap \ell_2$  and axis  $C_1C_2$ .

Lemma 1.11 (See Piper (10), result 5.) Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and let  $\ell$  be a line of  $\pi$ . Let  $\ell$  possess a point  $Q$  with the property that  $P \in \ell$  ( $P \neq Q$ ) implies that there exists a non-trivial  $(P, \ell)$ -elation. Then there exists a non-trivial  $(Q, \ell)$ -elation.

Proof: Let  $\pi$  have order  $n$  and let the points of  $\ell$  be labelled  $P_1, \dots, P_n, Q$ . Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $Q$  ( $m \neq \ell$ ). Let  $\alpha_i$  be a non-trivial  $(P_i, \ell)$ -elation,  $i = 1$  to  $n$ .

Then

$$m^{\alpha_i} \neq m, \quad i = 1 \text{ to } n \text{ (as } m \cap \ell \neq P_i, \\ i = 1 \text{ to } n).$$

Hence  $m$  has  $n$  images under the set  $\{\alpha_i\}$ , but no more than  $(n-1)$  of these can be distinct, as  $m$  and  $\ell$  are not possible images and there are  $(n+1)$  lines through  $Q$ . Hence there exist  $j$  and  $k$  ( $1 \leq j \leq n, 1 \leq k \leq n$ ) such that

$$m^{\alpha_j} = m^{\alpha_k}, \quad j \neq k.$$

Thus  $m^{\alpha_j\alpha_k^{-1}} = m$  and  $\alpha_j\alpha_k^{-1} \neq 1$  as  $j \neq k$ .

But by lemma 1.5,  $\alpha_j\alpha_k^{-1}$  is an elation with axis  $\ell$ , and as it fixes  $m$ , its centre must be  $Q$ . Hence  $\alpha_j\alpha_k^{-1}$  is a non-trivial  $(Q, \ell)$ -elation.

## CHAPTER II

### THE CO-ORDINATIZATION OF THE PROJECTIVE PLANE

The following treatment is patterned after that of Pickert (8). However, the ternary ring introduced by Hall (5) is also discussed, and its relation to that of Pickert is treated in some detail.

### THE ASSIGNING OF CO-ORDINATES

Let  $\pi$  be an arbitrary projective plane, and let UVOE be an arbitrarily chosen non-degenerate quadrangle of  $\pi$ . The line UV, henceforth called the line at infinity, together with its points, is now deleted from  $\pi$ , and the resulting affine plane is denoted as  $\bar{\pi}$ . The points of  $\bar{\pi}$  are called affine points. Let

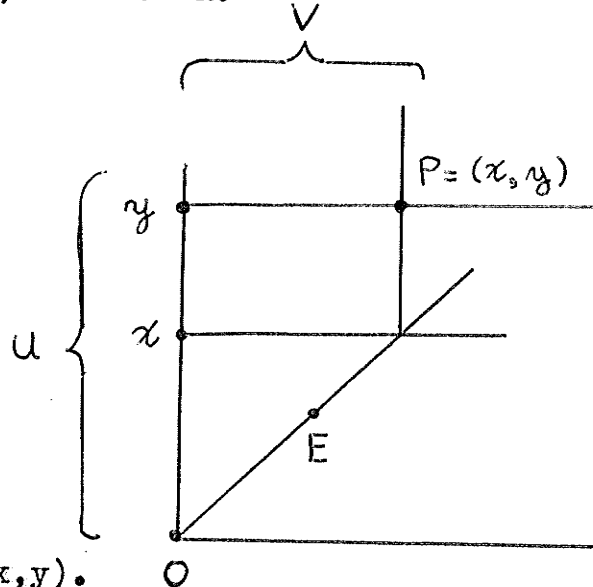
$$R = \{P \mid P \in OV, P \in \bar{\pi}\}.$$

If  $\pi$  is a finite plane of order  $n$ , then  $R$  possesses  $n$  distinct elements, which henceforth shall be denoted by  $\{0, 1, a, b, \dots\}$ . The special elements  $0$  and  $1$  are identified with the points  $O$  and  $UE \cap OV$  respectively. Because  $\bar{\pi}$  can be extended in one and only one way (apart from isomorphism) to a projective plane, diagrams can without confusion be drawn in the affine plane. Braces will indicate pencils of lines passing through the same point on the line at infinity.

The points of  $\pi$  are now co-ordinatized as follows. To each point  $P$  of  $\bar{\pi}$  is assigned an ordered pair of

elements of  $R$ . The members of this pair are called the "co-ordinates" of  $P$ , and are assigned as follows:  $P$  has co-ordinates  $(x,y)$ , where  $y$  is the element  $UP \cap OV$  of  $R$  and  $x$  is the element  $(PV \cap OE) \cup OV$  of  $R$ .

It is customary to identify a point of  $\bar{\pi}$  with its co-ordinate pair, as there is a one-to-one correspondence between the points of the affine plane and the elements of  $R \times R$ . Thus if  $P \in \bar{\pi}$  has co-ordinates  $(x,y)$ , one writes  $P = (x,y)$ .

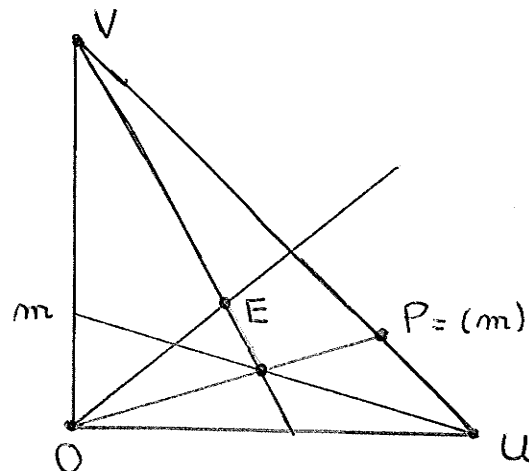


The "points at infinity", i.e. those on the line  $UV$ , are assigned singleton co-ordinates as follows:

- (1)  $V$  is given the co-ordinate  $(\infty)$
- (2)  $P \neq V$  is given the co-ordinate  $(m)$   
where  $OP \cap VE = (1, m)$ .

It is easily verified that the singleton co-ordinate  $(m)$  of (2) is well-defined and that  $P_1 = (m), P_2 = (m)$  if and only if  $P_1 = P_2$ .

In co-ordinatizing lines of the affine plane, a distinction is made between the pencil of lines through  $V$  and the remaining lines of the affine plane. If  $\ell \in \bar{\pi}$  and  $V \notin \ell$ , then  $\ell$





is assigned the singleton co-ordinate  $[x]$ , where  $\ell \cap OE = (x, x)$  defines the element  $x \in R$ . As  $\ell \cap OE$  is well-defined,  $x$  also is.

If  $\ell \in \bar{\pi}$  and  $V \notin \ell$ ,  $\ell$  is assigned the ordered pair  $[m, b]$  as its co-ordinates, where  $m$  is defined by  $\ell \cap UV = (m)$  and  $b$  is defined by  $\ell \cap OV = (o, b)$ . The co-ordinate  $m$  of a line  $[m, b]$  is called the "slope" of the line; affine lines passing through  $V$  are said to have "infinite slope".

The line  $UV$  is assigned the singleton co-ordinate  $[\infty]$ . This completes the co-ordinatization of the points and lines of  $\pi$ .

The following special cases are of interest, and are easily verified:

$$(1) \quad O = (o, o), \quad E = (1, 1)$$

If  $P \in \bar{\pi}$ :

$$(2) \quad P \in OE \Leftrightarrow P = (x, x) \text{ for some } x \in R$$

$$(3) \quad P \in OU \Leftrightarrow P = (x, o) \text{ for some } x \in R$$

$$(4) \quad P \in OV \Leftrightarrow P = (o, y) \text{ where } y \text{ is the element of } R \text{ identified with } P.$$

$$(5) \quad P \in EV \Leftrightarrow P = (1, y) \text{ for some } y \in R$$

$$(6) \quad P \in EU \Leftrightarrow P = (x, 1) \text{ for some } x \in R$$

$$(7) \quad OV = [o], \quad EV = [1]$$

$$(8) \quad V \notin \ell, \quad O \in \ell \Leftrightarrow \ell = [m, o] \text{ for some } m \in R$$

$$(9) \quad U \in \ell, \quad \ell \neq (\infty) \Leftrightarrow \ell = [o, b] \text{ for some } b \in R$$

$$(10) \quad OU = [o, o].$$

THE TERNARY RING OF  $\pi$

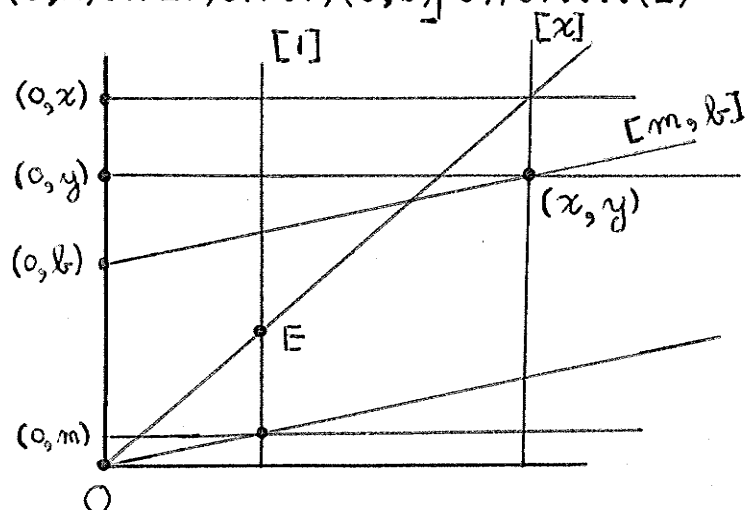
Closely associated with the co-ordinate set  $R$  of a projective plane  $\pi$  is the ternary ring of  $\pi$ . The ternary ring is defined to be the ordered pair  $(R, T)$  where  $R$  is the set defined previously and  $T$  is a ternary function mapping  $R \times R \times R$  onto  $R$  and defined as follows: if  $(m, x, b)$  is an arbitrary ordered triple of  $R \times R \times R$ , then  $y = T(m, x, b) \iff (x, y) \in [m, b]$  where we have identified points and lines with their co-ordinates.

Lemma 2.1  $T$  is a well-defined mapping from  $R \times R \times R$  onto  $R$ .

Proof: It must be shown that given  $(m, x, b) \in R \times R \times R$ ,  $T(m, x, b)$  is uniquely determined. Let  $P$  be an affine point on  $[m, b]$  with first co-ordinate  $x$ . Then  $PV \cap OE = (x, x)$ , and so  $P \in [x]$ . Hence  $P = [x] \cap [m, b]$  and as two lines intersect in a unique point,  $P$  is uniquely determined. Thus the point  $(x, y)$  that lies on  $[m, b]$  is uniquely determined, and hence  $y$  is. In fact it can easily be verified that

$$(o, y) = [((o, x)U \cap OE)V \cap (((o, m)U \cap EV)O \cap UV)(o, b)]U \cap OV \dots (1)$$

As  $y$  is uniquely determined, the ternary operation  $T$  is well-defined. It is onto because for any  $y \in R$ , any affine line  $[m, b]$  has incident on it an affine



point with second co-ordinate  $y$  (this follows from the axioms of incidence).

The function  $T$  will be called the "Pickert ternary function" and the algebra  $(R, T)$  will be called the "Pickert ternary ring", as this is Pickert's version of Hall's ternary ring (see Pickert (9)).

Two binary operations mapping  $R \times R$  onto  $R$  are now defined in terms of the ternary function  $T$ . These are addition (symbolized  $+$ ) and multiplication (symbolized  $\cdot$ ), and they are defined as follows:

- (1) For any  $x, b \in R$ ,  

$$x+b = T(1, x, b)$$
- (2) For any  $m, x \in R$ ,  

$$m \cdot x = T(m, x, 0).$$

Lemma 2.2

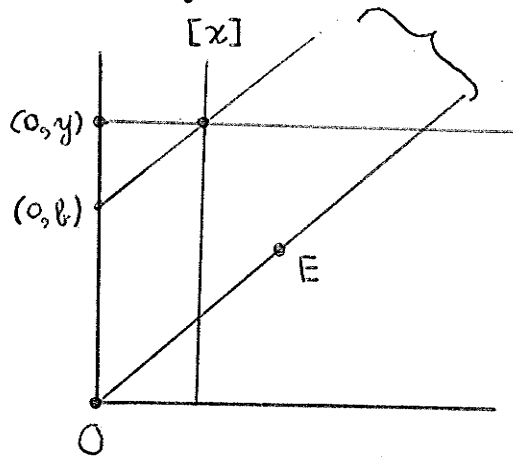
- (1) Addition amongst elements of  $R$  is a loop.
- (2) Multiplication amongst elements of  $R - \{0\}$  is a loop.

Proof: (1) By the definition of addition and the expression (in the proof of lemma 2.1) for  $(o, y)$  in terms of  $m, x$ , and  $b$ , one obtains that

$$y = x+b \iff (o, y) = ([x] \cap [1, b]) \cup \cap oV.$$

By lemma 2.1,  $f, x$ , and  $b$  are specified,  $(x+b)$  is uniquely determined. Further, if  $x$  and  $b$  are specified,  $[x]$  is seen to be the line joining the points  $V$  and

$(o,y)U \cap (o,b)(1)$ ; by the incidence axioms,  $[x]$ , and therefore  $x$ , is uniquely defined. If  $y$  and  $x$  are specified,  $(o,b)$  is seen to be the point of intersection of  $(x,y)(1)$  and  $OV$ ; thus  $(o,b)$ , and hence  $b$ , are uniquely determined. Hence addition is a loop.

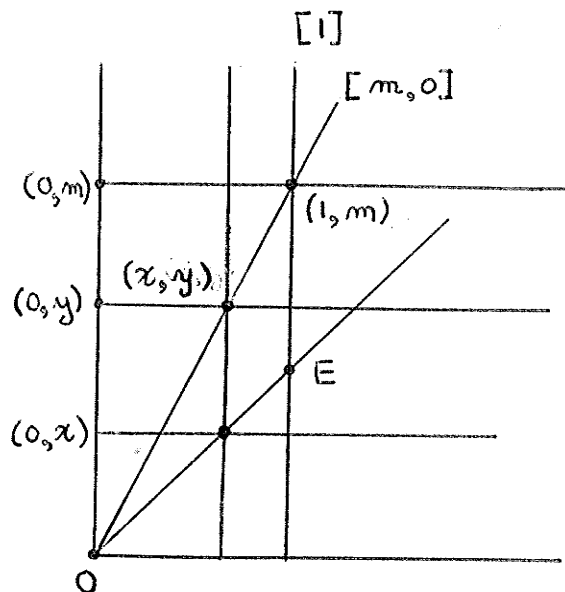


(2) By the definition of multiplication, it is easily seen that

$$y = mx \Leftrightarrow (o,y) = [((o,x)U \cap OE)V \cap ((o,m)U \cap EV)O]U \cap OV.$$

By lemma 2.1,  $y$  is uniquely determined if  $m$  and  $x$  are specified. If  $y$  and  $x$  are specified in  $R - \{o\}$ , it is seen that

$(o,m) = OV \cap (EV \cap O(x,y))U$  and hence by the incidence axioms,  $(o,m)$  is uniquely determined (note that the line  $O(x,y)$  is well-defined as  $x \neq o \neq y$ ).



If  $y$  and  $m$  are specified, it is seen that

$$[x] = ((o,y)U \cap (1,m)O)V$$

and so by the incidence axioms,  $[x]$  and thus  $x$  are uniquely determined.

Hence multiplication over  $R - \{o\}$  is a loop.

Lemma 2.3 For all  $a, b \in R$

- (i)  $ab = 0 \iff a = 0 \text{ or } b = 0$
- (ii)  $0+a = a+0 = a$
- (iii)  $1 \cdot a = a \cdot 1 = a.$

Proof (i) First suppose that  $ab = 0$  and that  $a \neq 0$ . Now  $ab = T(a, b, 0)$ , so

$$0 = T(a, b, 0).$$

Hence  $(b, 0) \in [a, 0]$ . Now  $(b, 0) \in OU$  while  $[a, 0]$  is the line joining  $(a)$  and  $0$ . As  $a \neq 0$ ,  $[a, 0] \neq OU$ . Hence

$$(b, 0) = [a, 0] \cap OU = (0, 0).$$

Hence  $b = 0$ .

Conversely, consider the product  $0 \cdot a$ . Let  $y = 0 \cdot a$ ; then  $y = T(0, a, 0)$ .

Consequently by equation (1) in the proof of lemma 2.1,

$$\begin{aligned} (0, y) &= [((0, a) \cup \cap OE) \vee \cap ((0, 0) \cup \cap EV) \cap \cap UV) (0, 0)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= [(a, a) \vee \cap OU] \cup \cap OV \\ &= OU \cap OV \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(0, y) = (0, 0)$ .

Thus  $y = 0$  and  $0 \cdot a = 0$ .

Similarly, consider the product  $a \cdot 0$  and let  $z = a \cdot 0$ ;

then  $z = T(a, 0, 0)$ .

Thus as above,

$$\begin{aligned} (0, z) &= [((0, 0) \cup \cap OE) \vee \cap ((0, a) \cup \cap EV) \cap \cap UV) (0, 0)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= [OV \cap (a) 0] \cup \cap OV \\ &= OU \cap OV \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(0, z) = (0, 0)$ .

Thus  $z = o$  and  $a \cdot o = o$ .

(ii) Let  $y = o+a$ . Then  $y = T(1, o, a)$ .

Hence by equation (1) in the proof of lemma 2.1,

$$\begin{aligned} (o, y) &= [((o, o) \cup \cap OE) \vee \cap (((o, 1) \cup \cap EV) \cap \cap UV)(o, a)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= [OV \cap (1)(o, a)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= (o, a) \cup \cap OV \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(o, y) = (o, a)$ .

Thus  $y = a$  and  $o+a = a$ .

Similarly, set  $z = a+o$ ; then  $z = T(1, a, o)$ .

Thus

$$\begin{aligned} (o, z) &= [((o, a) \cup \cap OE) \vee \cap (((o, 1) \cup \cap EV) \cap \cap UV)(o, o)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= [(a, a) \vee \cap OE] \cup \cap OV \\ &= (a, a) \cup \cap OV \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(o, z) = (o, a)$ .

Thus  $z = a$  and so  $a+o = a$ .

(iii) Let  $y = 1 \cdot a$ . Then  $y = T(1, a, o)$ , and

by the last argument in (ii), it immediately follows that  $y = a$ , i.e. that  $a = 1 \cdot a$ .

Similarly, let  $z = a \cdot 1$ . Then  $z = T(a, 1, o)$ .

Thus as above

$$\begin{aligned} (o, z) &= [((o, 1) \cup \cap OE) \vee \cap (((o, a) \cup \cap EV) \cap \cap UV)(o, o)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= [EV \cap ((1, a) \cap \cap UV)(o, o)] \cup \cap OV \\ &= (a, a) \cup \cap OV \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(o, z) = (o, a)$ .

Thus  $z = a$  and  $a \cdot 1 = a$ .

THE HALL TERNARY RING

Marshall Hall (Hall (5), chapter 20) co-ordinatizes the projective plane in essentially the same way as Pickert does, but defines a ternary function  $H$  mapping  $R \times R \times R \rightarrow R$  in a somewhat different manner. If  $(m, x, b) \in R \times R \times R$ , then the element  $H(m, x, b)$  of  $R$  is defined as follows:

$$y = H(m, x, b) \iff (m, y) \in [x, b].$$

Thus for any three elements  $m, x, b \in R$ , it follows that  $T(m, x, b) = H(x, m, b)$ .

Hall defines the binary operation of addition, mapping  $R \times R \rightarrow R$ , as follows:

$$y = x + b \iff (x, y) \in [1, b];$$

i.e.  $\iff y = H(x, 1, b)$ .

Thus addition as defined by Hall is the same function as addition as defined by Pickert.

Hall defines multiplication, a binary function mapping  $R \times R \rightarrow R$  which we shall denote by  $\dot{\cdot}_H$ , as follows:

$$y = x \dot{\cdot}_H m \iff (x, y) \in [m, 0].$$

$$\text{i.e. } y = H(x, m, 0) = T(m, x, 0) = m \dot{\cdot}_T x,$$

where  $\dot{\cdot}_T$  denotes the Pickert operation of multiplication. Thus for arbitrary  $m, x \in R$ ,

$$m \dot{\cdot}_T x = x \dot{\cdot}_H m,$$

and as multiplication is in general non-commutative, the

Pickert and Hall multiplications are in general distinct functions.

ALGEBRAIC CONSEQUENCES OF  $(C, \gamma)$ -TRANSITIVITY IN  $\pi$

If UVOE is a non-degenerate quadrangle as above, it follows from lemma 1.9 that  $\pi$  is an alternative plane if and only if it is a translation plane with respect to the non-concurrent lines UV, OV, and OU. By lemma 1.7, this will occur if and only if the plane is (U,UV)-transitive, (V,UV)-transitive, (V,OV)-transitive, (O,OV)-transitive, (O,OU)-transitive and (U,OU)-transitive. The algebraic properties of the ternary ring that are associated with the various types of transitivity mentioned above are now developed.

First two splitting laws (linearity conditions) that ternary rings obey under certain circumstances are mentioned. They are as follows:

$L_1$  : If, for all  $m, x, b \in R$ , the identity

$$T(m, x, b) = m \cdot x + b$$

i.e.  $T(m, x, b) = T(1, T(m, x, o), b)$

holds, then R is said to obey the "first splitting law", denoted by  $L_1$ .

$L_2$  : If, for all  $m, x, b \in R$  the identity

$$T(m, x, mb) = m \cdot (x + b),$$

i.e.  $T(m, x, mb) = T(m, T(1, x, b), o)$

holds, then R is said to obey the "second splitting law", denoted by  $L_2$ .



Theorem 2.1 A projective plane  $\pi$  is  $(V, UV)$ -transitive if and only if  $L_1$  holds and if addition is associative in the ternary ring of  $\pi$ .

Proof: First assume that  $\pi$  is  $(V, UV)$ -transitive. Then for arbitrary  $a \in R$  there exists a collineation  $\sigma_a$  with axis  $UV$  and centre  $V$  such that  $(o, o)^{\sigma_a} = (o, a)$ .

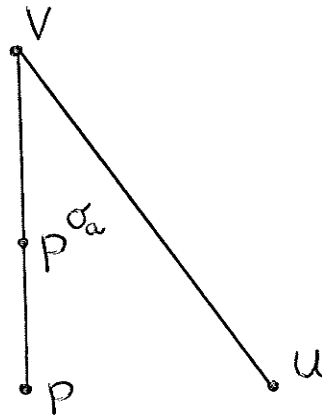
As points on  $UV$  and lines through  $V$  are fixed by  $\sigma_a$ , it follows that for arbitrary  $m \in R$ ,

$$[m]^{\sigma_a} = [m]$$

$$(m)^{\sigma_a} = (m)$$

$$(UV)^{\sigma_a} = UV$$

and  $(\infty)^{\sigma_a} = (\infty)$ .



If  $P = (x, y)$  is an arbitrary affine point of  $\pi$ , then  $P \in [x]$ . Consequently as  $\equiv P, P^{\sigma_a}, V$ , it follows that  $P^{\sigma_a} \in [x]$ . In particular if  $x = o$ , then  $(o, y)^{\sigma_a} \in [o]$ .

Hence the collineation  $\sigma_a$  induces a permutation on the affine points of  $[o]$ , and thus on the elements of  $R$ .

This permutation will be symbolized by writing

$$(o, y)^{\sigma_a} = (o, y^{\sigma_a}) \quad ;$$

thus  $y \longrightarrow y^{\sigma_a}$  is a permutation of  $R$ . Note in particular that from the definition of  $\sigma_a$ ,  $o^{\sigma_a} = a$ .

It follows that

$$(x, y)^{\sigma_a} = (x, y^{\sigma_a}) \quad ,$$

for  $\equiv (o, y), (x, y), U \Rightarrow \equiv (o, y^{\sigma_a}), (x, y)^{\sigma_a}, U$

and all affine points of a given line through  $U$  have the same  $y$ -co-ordinate.

The mapping  $\tau$  of elements of  $R$  is now defined by

$$[m, b]^{\sigma_a} = [m, b^\tau] \quad \text{for all } m, b \in R.$$

(Note that as  $(m) \in [m, b]$  and as  $(m)^{\sigma_a} = (m)$ , the image of  $[m, b]$  under  $\sigma_a$  will also have slope  $m$ ). However,  $(x, y) \in [m, b]$  if and only if  $(x, y)^{\sigma_a} \in [m, b]^{\sigma_a}$ ; i.e.

$$y = T(m, x, b) \iff y^{\sigma_a} = T(m, x, b^\tau);$$

thus  $(T(m, x, b))^{\sigma_a} = T(m, x, b^\tau) \dots (1)$

for all  $m, x, b \in R$ . In particular, since  $T(m, o, b) = b$  for all  $m, b \in R$ , setting  $x = o$  in equation (1) gives  $b^{\sigma_a} = b^\tau$  for all  $b \in R$ ; thus  $\sigma_a = \tau$  and equation (1) becomes

$$(T(m, x, b))^{\sigma_a} = T(m, x, b^{\sigma_a}) \quad \text{for all } m, x, b, a \in R.$$

Setting  $m = 1$ , and using the fact that  $T(1, x, b) = x + b$ , one obtains that

$$(x + b)^{\sigma_a} = x + b^{\sigma_a} \dots (2)$$

Setting  $b = o$

$$(x + o)^{\sigma_a} = x + o^{\sigma_a}$$

i.e.  $x^{\sigma_a} = x + a \quad \text{for all } x \in R.$

Hence from equation (2) it follows that

$$(x + b) + a = x + (b + a).$$

But as  $a, x$ , and  $b$  are arbitrary in  $R$ , it follows that addition in  $R$  is associative.

Also, to each  $x \in R$  there exists a unique additive inverse; for suppose that  $x+q = o$ . Then  $T(1,x,q) = o$ , i.e.  $(x,o) \in (1,q)$ . It follows that

$$(o,q) = OV \cap (OE \cap UV) \cap ((UX \cap OE) \cap V \cap OU)$$

which by the axioms of incidence is a well-defined affine point of  $\pi$ . As  $x+o = x$  for all  $x \in R$  (lemma 2.3, (ii)) and as  $(R,+)$  is a loop (lemma 2.2, (1)), it follows that  $(R,+)$  is a group.

To derive the first splitting law, note that as  $(T(m,x,b))^{\sigma_a} = T(m,x,b^{\sigma_a})$ , it follows that

$$T(m,x,b)+a = T(m,x,b+a) \quad \text{for all } m,x,b,a \in R.$$

Setting  $b = o$ ,

$$T(m,x,o)+a = T(m,x,a)$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad mx+a = T(m,x,a)$$

and thus  $L_1$  holds.

Conversely, suppose that  $(R,+)$  is a group and that  $L_1$  holds, and consider the mapping  $\sigma_a$  of points and lines of  $\pi$  defined, for any given  $a \in R$ , as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} (x,y)^{\sigma_a} = (x,y+a) & [m,b]^{\sigma_a} = [m,b+a] \\ (m)^{\sigma_a} = (m) & [c]^{\sigma_a} = [c] \\ (\infty)^{\sigma_a} = (\infty) & [\infty]^{\sigma_a} = [\infty] \end{array}$$

Obviously  $\sigma_a$  fixes all points on  $[\infty]$  and all lines through  $V$ ; thus to show that it is a  $(V,UV)$ -collineation it suffices to show that  $\sigma_a$  preserves incidence. The verification that this occurs is trivial except for the case in which it is shown that

$$(x,y) \in [m,b] \iff (x,y)^{\sigma_a} \in [m,b]^{\sigma_a}.$$

But by  $L_1$

$$\begin{aligned} (x,y) \in [m,b] &\iff y = mx+b \\ &\iff y+a = (mx+b)+a \\ &= (mx+(b+a)); \end{aligned}$$

hence  $(x,y) \in [m,b] \iff y+a = T(m,x,b+a)$

i.e.  $(x,y) \in [m,b] \iff (x,y)^{\sigma_a} \in [m,b]^{\sigma_a}.$

Hence  $\sigma_a$  preserves incidence and is thus a  $(V,UV)$ -collineation. As "a" was arbitrary in  $R$ , it follows that  $\pi$  is  $(V,UV)$ -transitive.

Theorem 2.2 A projective plane  $\pi$  is  $(U,UV)$ -transitive if and only if  $(R,+)$  is a group and  $L_2$  holds.

Proof: First assume that  $\pi$  is  $(U,UV)$ -transitive.

Then for arbitrary  $b \in R$ , there is a  $(U,UV)$ -relation  $\sigma_b$  such that  $(0,0)^{\sigma_b} = (b,0)$ . Because  $\sigma_b$  fixes the line  $[0,0]$ , it induces a permutation on the affine points of  $[0,0]$ , and thus on the elements of  $R$ , which will be denoted by  $(x,0)^{\sigma_b} = (x^{\sigma_b},0)$ ; thus  $x \rightarrow x^{\sigma_b}$ , where  $x^{\sigma_b}$  is defined as above, is the permutation induced on  $R$  by  $\sigma_b$ . In particular  $0^{\sigma_b} = b$ .

From incidence considerations it immediately follows that

$$\begin{aligned} [0,a]^{\sigma_b} &= [0,a] \quad \text{for all } a \in R; \\ (\infty)^{\sigma_b} &= (\infty) \end{aligned}$$

$$(m)^{\sigma_b} = (m)$$

and  $[\infty]^{\sigma_b} = [\infty]$ .

Further, as for arbitrary  $x \in R$   $(x, 0) \in [x]$ , it follows that  $(x, 0)^{\sigma_b} \in [x]^{\sigma_b}$ ; i.e.

$$(x^{\sigma_b}, 0) \in [x]^{\sigma_b}.$$

But  $(x^{\sigma_b}, 0) \in [x^{\sigma_b}]$ , and so

$$[x]^{\sigma_b} = [x^{\sigma_b}].$$

Hence for an arbitrary affine point  $(x, y)$ , since

$$\equiv (x, y), (x, y)^{\sigma_b} \in U \text{ and since } (x, y)^{\sigma_b} \in [x]^{\sigma_b}, \text{ it}$$

follows that  $(x, y)^{\sigma_b} = (x^{\sigma_b}, y)$ .

Similarly, as  $(m)^{\sigma_b} = (m)$ , an affine line  $[m, c]$  will be mapped as follows:

$$[m, c]^{\sigma_b} = [m, c^{\varphi_b}]$$

where this defines the permutation  $\varphi_b$  of elements of  $R$ .

As  $\sigma_b$  is a collineation,

$$(x, y) \in [m, c] \iff (x, y)^{\sigma_b} \in [m, c]^{\sigma_b};$$

i.e.  $y = T(m, x, c) \iff y = T(m, x^{\sigma_b}, c^{\varphi_b})$ .

Thus for all  $m, x, b, c \in R$

$$T(m, x, c) = T(m, x^{\sigma_b}, c^{\varphi_b}) \quad \dots (1).$$

Setting  $x = 0$ ,

$$c = T(m, 0, c^{\varphi_b}).$$

Hence equation (1) becomes

$$T(m, x, T(m, 0, c^{\varphi_b})) = T(m, x^{\sigma_b}, c^{\varphi_b}) \quad \dots (2).$$

Setting  $m = 1$  and recalling the definition of addition,

$$x + (0 + c^{\varphi_b}) = x^{\sigma_b} + c^{\varphi_b} \quad \dots (3)$$

Choosing  $c$  such that  $c^{\varphi_b} = o$  (this is possible as  $\varphi_b$  is a permutation on  $R$ ), equation (3) becomes

$$x+b = x^{\sigma_b} \quad \text{for all } x, b \in R.$$

Using this, equation (3) becomes, in general,

$$x+(b+c)^{\varphi_b} = (x+b)+c^{\varphi_b} \quad \text{for all } x, b, c \in R.$$

Hence addition is associative and (by the reasoning used in theorem 2.1),  $(R, +)$  is a group.

Choosing  $c$  so that  $c^{\varphi_b} = o$ , equation (2) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} T(m, x, mb) &= T(m, x+b, o) \\ &= m(x+b) \end{aligned}$$

and hence  $L_2$  holds.

Conversely, assume that  $L_2$  holds and that  $(R, +)$  is a group. For arbitrary  $c \in R$ , define a mapping  $\sigma_c$  as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (o)^{\sigma_c} &= (oc) & [\infty]^{\sigma_c} &= [\infty] \\ (m)^{\sigma_c} &= (m) & [x]^{\sigma_c} &= [x+c] \\ (x, y)^{\sigma_c} &= (x+c, y) & [m, b] &= [m, T(m, \alpha, b)] \end{aligned}$$

where  $\alpha$  is defined by  $c+\alpha = o$ .

The verification that  $\sigma_c$  preserves incidence, and hence is a collineation, is trivial except for the verification that

$$(x, y) \in [m, b] \iff (x, y)^{\sigma_c} \in [m, b]^{\sigma_c} \quad \dots (4).$$

But  $(x, y) \in [m, b] \iff y = T(m, x, b)$

while  $(x, y)^{\sigma_c} \in [m, b]^{\sigma_c} \iff y = T(m, x+c, T(m, \alpha, b))$ .

If  $\bar{b}$  is defined by  $m\bar{b} = b$  (and  $\bar{b}$  is well-defined as

$(R, \cdot)$  is a loop), it follows that

$$\begin{aligned}
 T(m, x+c, T(m, \alpha, b)) &= T(m, x+c, T(m, \alpha, \bar{m}b)) \\
 &= T(m, x+c, m T(1, \alpha, \bar{b})) \\
 &= mT(1, x+c, \alpha+\bar{b}) \text{ (by successive} \\
 &\quad \text{applications of } L_2) \\
 &= m((x+c)+(\alpha+\bar{b})) \\
 &= m((x+(c+\alpha))+\bar{b}) \\
 &= m(x+b) \text{ (associativity of} \\
 &\quad \text{addition)} \\
 &= T(m, x, \bar{m}b)
 \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $T(m, x+c, T(m, \alpha, b)) = T(m, x, b)$ .

Hence condition (4) holds and  $\sigma_c$  is a  $(U, UV)$ -collineation (as it fixes all lines through  $U$  and all points on  $UV$ ). As  $c$  was arbitrary in  $R$ , it follows that  $\pi$  is  $(U, UV)$ -transitive.

**Theorem 2.3** A projective plane  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to the line  $UV$  if and only if:

- (i)  $(R, +)$  is an abelian group,
- (ii)  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are valid.

**Proof:** By lemma 1.7,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $UV$  if and only if  $\pi$  is  $(V, UV)$ - and  $(U, UV)$ -transitive.

If  $\pi$  is  $(V, UV)$ - and  $(U, UV)$ -transitive, by the last two theorems,  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  both hold and  $(R, +)$  is a group. Also, on the assumption that  $\pi$  is a trans-

lation plane with respect to UV, by theorem 1.1, the group of all elations with axis UV is abelian. For arbitrary  $a, b \in R$ , there exist  $(V, UV)$  elations  $\sigma_a$  and  $\sigma_b$  such that  $(o, o)^{\sigma_a} = (o, a)$  and  $(o, o)^{\sigma_b} = (o, b)$ .

Then, as in the proof of theorem 2.1,

$$(o, o)^{\sigma_a \sigma_b} = (o, a)^{\sigma_b} = (o, a+b).$$

Similarly  $(o, o)^{\sigma_b \sigma_a} = (o, b+a)$ .

But  $\sigma_a \sigma_b = \sigma_b \sigma_a$ ; hence for all  $a, b \in R$

$$a+b = b+a$$

and  $(R, +)$  is abelian.

Conversely, if  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are valid and  $(R, +)$  is a group, by the two previous theorems  $\pi$  is  $(U, UV)$ -transitive and  $(V, UV)$ -transitive; hence it is a translation plane with respect to UV.

Corollary: If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to UV, then the left distributive law is valid in  $C$ ; i.e. for all  $a, b, c \in R$ ,  $a(b+c) = ab+ac$ .

Proof: If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to UV, then both  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  hold. Hence

$$T(a, b, ac) = ab+ac \quad \text{by } L_1 ;$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{but } T(a, b, ac) &= aT(1, b, c) \\ &= a(b+c) \quad \text{by } L_2 ; \end{aligned}$$

hence  $ab+ac = a(b+c)$  as claimed.



Note that under the Hall definition of multiplication, a right distributive law is obtained when  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $UV$ ; i.e. for all  $a, b, c \in R$ ,  $ba+ca = (b+c)a$ .

Theorem 2.4 If a projective plane  $\pi$  is  $(U, UV)$ - and  $(V, OV)$ -transitive, then the right distributive law holds; i.e. for all  $a, b, c \in R$ ,  $ba+ca = (b+c)a$ .

Proof: As  $\pi$  is  $(V, OV)$ -transitive, for arbitrary  $m \in R$  there exists a  $(V, OV)$ -relation  $\sigma_m$  such that  $(o)^{\sigma_m} = (m)$ . Then as  $[\infty]$  is fixed by  $\sigma_m$ ,  $\sigma_m$  permutes the points of  $[\infty] - \{(o)\}$  amongst themselves, and hence induces a permutation  $a \rightarrow a^{\sigma_m}$  of the elements of  $R$  defined by  $(a)^{\sigma_m} = (a^{\sigma_m})$ . Hence in particular  $(o)^{\sigma_m} = m$ . Incidence considerations immediately give that

$$\begin{aligned} [\infty]^{\sigma_m} &= [\infty] & (o, b)^{\sigma_m} &= (o, b) \\ [x]^{\sigma_m} &= [x] & (\infty)^{\sigma_m} &= (\infty). \end{aligned}$$

As  $(a)^{\sigma_m} \in [a, b]^{\sigma_m}$  and  $(o, b)^{\sigma_m} \in [a, b]^{\sigma_m}$ , it follows that  $[a, b]^{\sigma_m} = [a^{\sigma_m}, b]$  and in particular  $[o, b]^{\sigma_m} = [m, b]$ .

For an arbitrary affine point  $(x, y)$ , since  $(x, y) \in [x]$ , it follows that

$$(x, y)^{\sigma_m} \in [x]^{\sigma_m} = [x].$$

As  $\pi$  is  $(U, UV)$ -transitive, by theorem 2.1  $L_1$  holds and from this it follows that  $(x, y) \in [o, y]$ ; hence

$$(x, y)^{\sigma_m} \in [o, y]^{\sigma_m} = [m, y].$$

Thus  $(x, y)^{\sigma_m} \in [x] \cap [m, y]$ , and from  $L_1$  it immediately

follows that

$$(x, y)^{\sigma_m} = (x, mx+y). \quad \dots (1)$$

As  $(x, y) \in [c, b] \iff (x, y)^{\sigma_m} \in [c, b]^{\sigma_m}$ , it follows

from  $L_1$  that

$$y = cx+b \iff mx+y = c^{\sigma_m}x+b,$$

i.e. that  $mx+(cx+b) = c^{\sigma_m}x+b$

for all  $m, c, x$ , and  $b \in R$ . As  $(R, +)$  is a group (since  $\pi$  is  $(U, UV)$ -transitive), this can be rewritten as

$$(mx+cx)+b = c^{\sigma_m}x+b,$$

i.e.  $mx+cx = c^{\sigma_m}x$  ..... (2)

for all  $m, x, c \in R$ . Setting  $x = 1$  in equation (1) gives

$$(1, y)^{\sigma_m} = (1, m+y) \text{ for all } m, y \in R.$$

But by  $L_1$ ,  $(1, c) \in [c, 0]$ ; hence

$$(1, c)^{\sigma_m} \in [c, 0]^{\sigma_m},$$

i.e.  $(1, m+c) \in [c^{\sigma_m}, 0]$ .

Hence by  $L_1$ ,  $m+c = c^{\sigma_m}$ . Substitution in equation (1) gives

$$mx+cx = (m+c)x \quad \text{for all } m, c, x \in R,$$

and hence the right distributive law holds.

Theorem 2.5 If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect

to the lines  $UV$  and  $OV$ , then for arbitrary  $c \in R - \{0\}$

there exists  $c^{-1} \in R$  such that for arbitrary  $b \in R$ ,

$$(bc)c^{-1} = b.$$

Proof: As  $\pi$  is  $(0, OV)$ -transitive, for each  $c \in R - \{0, -1\}$

there exists an  $(0,0V)$ -relation  $\sigma_c$  such that  $(o)^{\sigma_c} = (-1-c, o)$ . Since, for arbitrary  $b \in R$ ,  $\sigma_c$  permutes the lines through  $(o, b+bc)$  amongst themselves, it follows that

$$[o, b+bc]^{\sigma_c} = [\bar{b}, b+bc]$$

for some element  $\bar{b}$  which will be in general a function of  $b$ . Since  $(o) \in [o, b+bc]$  it follows that

$$(o)^{\sigma_c} \in [o, b+bc]^{\sigma_c},$$

i.e.  $(-1-c, o) \in [\bar{b}, b+bc]$ .

As  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $UV$ , by theorem 2.3  $L_1$  is valid and hence

$$o = \bar{b}(-1-c) + (b+bc).$$

Using the easily verified fact that  $(-a)b = -(ab) = a(-b)$ , and the fact that by the hypotheses and theorems 2.3 and 2.4 both distributive laws are valid, it follows that

$$o = (-\bar{b}+b)(1+c).$$

As  $c \neq -1$ , it follows from lemma 2.3 that  $-\bar{b}+b = o$ , i.e. that  $\bar{b} = b$ . Consequently

$$[o, b+bc]^{\sigma_c} = [b, b+bc] \quad \text{for arbitrary } b \in R.$$

Also, as  $(o, o) \in [b+bc, o]$  for arbitrary  $b \in R$ , it follows that  $[b+bc, o]^{\sigma_c} = [b+bc, o]$  for all  $b \in R$ . But by  $L_1$ , for all  $b \in R$ ,  $(1, b+bc) \in [b+bc, o]$  and  $(1, b+bc) \in [o, b+bc]$ .

Hence

$$(1, b+bc)^{\sigma_c} = [b+bc, o]^{\sigma_c} \cap [o, b+bc]^{\sigma_c}$$

$$= [b+bc, 0] \cap [b, b+bc].$$

If  $c \neq 0$  this is an affine point. On this assumption, if  $(1, b+bc)^{\sigma c} = (h, k)$ , by  $L_1$  one obtains

$$k = (b+bc)h$$

and

$$k = bh + (b+bc).$$

Using the distributive laws, these equations give

$$bh + (bc)h = bh + b + bc$$

i.e.  $(bc)h = b + bc \dots\dots (1)$  for all  $b \in R$ .

However, for any  $b \in R$ ,  $(1, b+bc) \in [1]$ , so  $(1, b+bc)^{\sigma c} \in [1]^{\sigma c}$ , and thus  $[1]^{\sigma c} = h$ . Hence  $h$  is a function of  $c$  alone;

by setting  $b = 1$  in equation (1) one obtains

$$ch = 1 + c$$

which specifies  $h$  uniquely as a function of  $c$ . Set

$h = u + 1$  (this uniquely determines  $u$ ). Substitution in equation (1) gives

$$(bc)(u+1) = b + bc$$

i.e.  $(bc)u = b$  (using the left distributive law)

for all  $b \in R$ . As  $u$  is a function of  $c$  alone, it follows

that  $u$  is the  $c^{-1}$  of the hypotheses, if  $c \neq -1$ . If

$c = -1$ , it is evident that  $(b(-1))(-1) = b$  for all  $b \in R$ .

Hence for all  $c \in R - \{0\}$ , there exists  $c^{-1} \in R - \{0\}$  such that  $(bc)c^{-1} = b$  for arbitrary  $b \in R$ .



Corollary I For all  $c \in R$ ,  $cc^{-1} = 1$ .

Proof: Set  $b = 1$  in  $(bc)c^{-1} = b$ .

Corollary II For all  $c \in R$ ,  $c^{-1}c = 1$ .

Proof: Setting  $b = c^{-1}$  in the above, one obtains  $(c^{-1}c)c^{-1} = c^{-1}$ . But  $1 \cdot c^{-1} = c^{-1}$  so by the loop property of  $(R - \{0\}, \cdot)$ ,  $c^{-1}c = 1$ .

Theorem 2.6 If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $UV$  and  $OV$ , then the following algebraic laws hold:

- (i)  $(R, +)$  is an abelian group.
- (ii)  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are valid.
- (iii)  $(R - \{0\}, \cdot)$  is a loop with a right inverse that obeys the inverse condition  $(bc)c^{-1} = b$  for all  $c \in R - \{0\}$  where  $c^{-1} \in R - \{0\}$  is so chosen that  $cc^{-1} = 1$ .
- (iv) Both distributive laws hold.

Proof: This follows immediately from theorems 2.3, 2.4, and 2.5.

Theorem 2.7 If a projective plane  $\pi$  obeys the algebraic laws enunciated in theorem 2.6, it is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $V$ .

Proof: By theorem 2.3,  $\pi$  will be a translation plane with respect to  $UV$ . Hence to show that  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $OV$ , it suffices by lemma 1.8 to show that there is a collineation of  $\pi$  mapping  $UV$  into

another line through  $V$ .

Consider the mapping  $\varphi$  of  $\pi$  defined by

$$(\infty)^\varphi = (\infty)$$

$$(m)^\varphi = (1, m)$$

$$(c, d)^\varphi = ((1+c^{-1})^{-1}, d(1+c)^{-1}) \quad \text{for } c \neq 0, -1$$

$$(0, d)^\varphi = (0, d)$$

$$(-1, d)^\varphi = (-d)$$

$$(UV)^\varphi = [1]$$

$$[1]^\varphi = UV$$

$$[c]^\varphi = [(1+c^{-1})^{-1}], \quad c \neq 0, -1 \quad [m, b]^\varphi = [m-b, b]$$

$$[0]^\varphi = [0]$$

Evidently  $\varphi$  fixes  $V$ . To show that  $\varphi$  is a collineation of  $\pi$ , it must be verified that  $\varphi$  preserves incidence. This is trivial for all cases except for showing that

$$(c, d) \in [m, b] \iff (c, d)^\varphi \in [m, b]^\varphi \quad (c \neq 0, -1).$$

By  $L_1$ ,  $(c, d) \in [m, b]$  if and only if  $d = mc + b$ .

Similarly  $(c, d)^\varphi \in [m, b]^\varphi$  if and only if

$$((1+c^{-1})^{-1}, d(1+c)^{-1}) \in [m-b, b],$$

i.e. if and only if

$$d(1+c)^{-1} = (m-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + b.$$

Hence  $(c, d) \in [m, b] \iff (c, d)^\varphi \in [m, b]^\varphi \quad (c \neq 0, -1)$

if and only if

$$(mc+b)(1+c)^{-1} = (m-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + b \quad \dots\dots (1)$$

is an identity for all  $m, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $c \neq 0, -1$ ).

However, for all  $m, b, c \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $c \neq 0, -1$ )

$$m = m$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and thus } m &= [m(1+c^{-1})^{-1}](1+c^{-1}) \\ &= m(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + [m(1+c^{-1})^{-1}]c^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } mc &= [m(1+c^{-1})^{-1}]c + m(1+c^{-1})^{-1} \\ &= [m(1+c^{-1})^{-1}](c+1) \\ &= [m(1+c^{-1})^{-1}](1+c). \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Hence } mc(1+c)^{-1} = ([m(1+c^{-1})^{-1}](1+c))(1+c)^{-1}$$

$$\text{i.e. } mc(1+c)^{-1} = m(1+c^{-1})^{-1} \quad \dots\dots (2)$$

and equation (2) is an identity for all  $m, c \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $c \neq 0, -1$ ).

Similarly  $o = -b+b$

$$\begin{aligned} &= (-b)[(1+c^{-1})^{-1}(1+c^{-1})] + b \\ &= [(-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1}](1+c^{-1}) + b \\ &= (-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + [(-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1}]c^{-1} + b. \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying on the right by  $c$ ,

$$o = [(-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1}]c + (-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + bc.$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } b &= [(-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1}]c + (-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + bc + b \\ &= [(-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1}](c+1) + b(c+1). \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Hence } b(1+c)^{-1} = (-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + b \quad \dots\dots (3)$$

is an identity for all  $b, c \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $c \neq 0, -1$ ).

But upon expanding (1) one obtains

$$(mc)(1+c^{-1}) + b(1+c)^{-1} = m(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + (-b)(1+c^{-1})^{-1} + b$$

and from (2) and (3) it is seen that this is an identity for all  $b, c, m \in \mathbb{R}$  ( $c \neq 0, -1$ ).

Hence  $\phi$  is indeed a collineation and  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $V$ .

---

Note that if Hall multiplication is used in the

co-ordinatization of  $\pi$ , then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $V$  if and only if the algebraic laws cited in theorem 2.6 hold, with the exception that the existence of a right inverse is replaced by the existence of a left inverse; i.e. for any  $c \neq 0$ ,  $c \in R$ , there exists  $c_L^{-1}$  such that  $c_L^{-1}(cb) = b$  for any  $b \in R$ .

Theorem 2.8 A projective plane  $\pi$  is an alternative plane if and only if it is co-ordinatized by an alternative field in which  $L_1$  is valid.

Proof: The plane  $\pi$  will be an alternative plane if and only if  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $UV$ ,  $OV$ , and  $OU$ , by lemma 1.9. Hence, using the results of theorems 2.6 and 2.7, it suffices to show:

(i) If  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $V$ , and if there exists  $(0,OU)$ -transitivity, then to each  $c \in R - \{0\}$  there exists a unique  $c_L^{-1} \in R - \{0\}$  such that  $c_L^{-1}(cb) = b$  for all  $b \in R$ , and in fact  $c_L^{-1}$  is the  $c^{-1}$  of theorem 2.5.

This will prove that an alternative plane is co-ordinatized by an alternative field.

(ii) A plane co-ordinatized by an alternative field in which  $L_1$  is valid possesses a collineation moving  $V$ . Then by the fact that  $V$  is a translation plane with respect to all lines through  $V$ , it follows



by lemma 1.6 that  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to three non-concurrent lines, and hence by lemma 1.9,  $\pi$  is an alternative plane.

To prove (i), suppose  $\pi$  is alternative. Then  $\pi$  is  $(0,OU)$ -transitive and there exists an  $(0,OU)$ -relation  $\sigma$  such that  $(\infty)^\sigma = (o,-1)$ . Evidently  $(a,o)^\sigma = (a,o)$  for all  $a \in R$ , and  $[m,o]^\sigma = [m,o]$  for all  $m \in R$ . Now  $[a] = (\infty)(a,o)$ , and so

$$[a]^\sigma = (\infty)^\sigma(a,o)^\sigma = (o,-1)(a,o).$$

If  $a \neq o$ ,  $[a]^\sigma$  is evidently of the form  $[m,b]$  and by  $L_1$  it is found that

$$[a]^\sigma = [a^{-1}, -1] \quad (a \neq o)$$

where  $a^{-1}$  is as defined in theorem 2.5.

Since for all  $r \in R$   $(o,o) \in [r,o]$ , it follows that  $[r,o]^\sigma = [r,o]$  for all  $r \in R$ . Thus for  $a \neq o \neq b$ , consider how the point  $(a, 1-ba)$  maps under  $\sigma$ . By  $L_1$  and the distributive laws it is found that

$(a, 1-ba) \in [a^{-1}-b, o]$ . Also  $(a, 1-ba) \in [a]$ ; hence

$$\begin{aligned} (a, 1-ba)^\sigma &= [a^{-1}-b, o]^\sigma \cap [a]^\sigma \\ &= [a^{-1}-b, o] \cap [a^{-1}, -1]. \quad \dots (1) \end{aligned}$$

As  $b \neq o$ ,  $(a, 1-ba)^\sigma$  is an affine point of  $\pi$  of the form  $(h,k)$ . Applying  $L_1$  and equation (1), one obtains

$$h = b^{-1}, \quad k = a^{-1}b^{-1}-1.$$

Consequently  $(a, 1-ba)^\sigma = (b^{-1}, a^{-1}b^{-1}-1) \quad \dots (2)$

for  $a \neq o \neq b$ .

Next consider how the point  $(1, 1-ab)$  maps under  $\sigma$  for  $a \neq 0 \neq b$ . By  $L_1$ ,  $(1, 1-ba) \in [1-ba, 0]$ .

Consequently

$$(1, 1-ba) = [1] \cap [1-ba, 0]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } (1, 1-ba)^\sigma &= [1]^\sigma \cap [1-ba, 0]^\sigma \\ &= [1, -1] \cap [1-ba, 0]. \end{aligned}$$

As  $a \neq 0 \neq b$ ,  $(1, 1-ba)^\sigma$  is an affine point of the form  $(h, k)$ . By  $L_1$ , the distributive laws, and the existence of the right alternative law, it is found that

$$h = (ba)^{-1}, \quad k = (ba)^{-1} - 1.$$

$$\text{Hence } (1, 1-ba)^\sigma = ((ba)^{-1}, (ba)^{-1} - 1).$$

As  $\sigma$  is an  $(0, 0U)$ -relation, lines through  $U$  are permuted amongst themselves by  $\sigma$ . Hence for  $a \neq 0 \neq b$ ,

$$[0, 1-ba]^\sigma = [0, k] \quad (\text{assuming } [0, 1-ba] \neq UV).$$

But  $(1, 1-ba) \in [0, 1-ba]$ ; hence

$$((ba)^{-1}, (ba)^{-1} - 1) \in [0, 1-ba]^\sigma$$

and evidently  $[0, 1-ba]^\sigma$  is an affine line. Hence by  $L_1$ ,

$$(ba)^{-1} - 1 = k.$$

$$\text{Consequently } [0, 1-ba]^\sigma = [0, (ba)^{-1} - 1]. \quad \dots (3)$$

Now  $(a, 1-ba) \in [0, 1-ba]$  and hence  $(a, 1-ba)^\sigma \in [0, 1-ba]^\sigma$ ;

consequently from equations (2) and (3)

$$(b^{-1}, a^{-1}b^{-1} - 1) \in [0, (ba)^{-1} - 1] \quad (a \neq 0 \neq b).$$

$$\text{Thus } a^{-1}b^{-1} - 1 = (ba)^{-1} - 1,$$

$$\text{i.e. } a^{-1}b^{-1} = (ba)^{-1}, \quad a \neq 0 \neq b.$$

However, from theorem 2.5 and the hypotheses,  
 $b^{-1} = (b^{-1}a^{-1})(a^{-1})^{-1}$ , and as  $(a^{-1})(a^{-1})^{-1} = 1$  and  
 $a^{-1}a = 1$ , by the loop properties of  $(R - \{o\}, \cdot)$ ,  
 $a = (a^{-1})^{-1}$ ; hence  $b^{-1} = (b^{-1}a^{-1})a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Thus } b &= (b^{-1})^{-1} = [(b^{-1}a^{-1})a]^{-1} \\ &= a^{-1}(b^{-1}a^{-1})^{-1} \\ &= a^{-1}((a^{-1})^{-1}(b^{-1})^{-1}) \\ &= a^{-1}(ab) \quad (\text{by several applications} \\ &\hspace{15em} \text{of } (ba)^{-1} = a^{-1}b^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

for  $a \neq o \neq b$ . If  $b = o$  then  $b = a^{-1}(ab)$  is trivially true. Hence for any  $a \in R - \{o\}$ ,  $a^{-1}$  has the property that  $b = a^{-1}(ab)$  for any  $b \in R$ . Hence  $R$  is an alternative field.

To prove (ii), consider the mapping  $\varphi$  of  $\pi$  defined as follows:

$$\begin{array}{ll} (a,b)\varphi = (b,a) & [c]\varphi = [o,c] \\ (m)\varphi = (m^{-1}), m \neq o & [m,b]\varphi = [m^{-1}, -m^{-1}b], m \neq o \\ (o)\varphi = (oo) & [o,b]\varphi = [b] \\ (oo)\varphi = (o) & [oo]\varphi = [oo]. \end{array}$$

Evidently this mapping moves  $V$ ; to show that  $\varphi$  is a collineation it must be verified that  $\varphi$  is one-to-one onto and preserves incidence. This is trivial, the most complicated case being the following:

$$\begin{aligned} (a,b) \in [m,c] (m \neq o) \text{ holds if and only if} \\ b = ma+c; (b,a) \in [m^{-1}, -m^{-1}c] \text{ holds if and only if} \end{aligned}$$

$a = m^{-1}b - m^{-1}c$ . But  $b = ma + c$  if and only if  
 $a = m^{-1}b - m^{-1}c$ , since  $a = m^{-1}(ma + c) - m^{-1}c$  is an  
 identity as  $m^{-1}(ma) = a$ . Thus

$$(a, b) \in [m, c] \iff (a, b)^\varphi \in [m, b]^\varphi.$$

Hence  $\varphi$  is a collineation and it follows that  
 $\pi$  is an alternative plane.

## CHAPTER III

### THE THEORY OF FINITE ALTERNATIVE FIELDS

In Chapter II it was shown that an alternative plane can be co-ordinatized by an alternative field. In this chapter it will be proved that any finite alternative field is a commutative field. It is well-known (Pickert (9), page 136) that the ternary ring of a projective plane is a field if and only if the plane is Pappian; it is also well-known (Ibid. page 144) that all Pappian planes are Desarguesian. Hence it follows that all finite alternative planes are Desarguesian.

#### DEFINITION OF AN ALTERNATIVE FIELD

Recall that an alternative field is a triple  $(A, +, \cdot)$  (where  $A$  is a set with special elements  $0$  and  $1$ , and  $+$  and  $\cdot$  are binary operations defined on  $A$ ) obeying the following axioms:

1. Addition is an abelian group with neutral element  $0$ .
2. The left and right distributive laws hold; i.e. for all  $a, b, c \in A$ ,
$$a(b+c) = ab+ac$$
$$(b+c)a = ba+ca$$
3. If  $x, y, z \in A - \{0\}$ , and if the values of any two of  $x, y, z$  are known, then the equation  $xy=z$  uniquely specifies the value of the

third. (I.e. multiplication, excluding 0, is a loop.)

4. To each  $a \in A - \{0\}$  there corresponds a unique element  $a^{-1} \in A - \{0\}$  such that  $a^{-1}a = aa^{-1} = 1$ , and for all  $b \in A$ ,

$$(ba)a^{-1} = b$$

$$\text{and } a^{-1}(ab) = b$$

5.  $1 \cdot a = a \cdot 1 = a$  for all  $a \in A$ .

Note that multiplication need not be either associative or commutative.

Lemma 3.1 For all  $a \in A$  and  $b \in A$ :

$$(i) \quad a \cdot 0 = 0 \cdot a = 0$$

$$(ii) \quad (-1)(a) = (a)(-1) = -a$$

$$(iii) \quad -(-a) = a$$

$$(iv) \quad ab = 0 \implies \text{either } a = 0 \text{ or } b = 0$$

where " $-a$ " denotes the additive inverse of " $a$ ".

Proof: (i) By axiom 2 and the fact that 0 is the neutral element for addition

$$a(1) = a(1+0) = a(1)+a(0).$$

Hence as addition is a group,

$$a \cdot 0 = 0.$$

Similarly  $0 \cdot a = 0$

(ii) From axiom 2,

$$(1+(-1)) \cdot a = 1 \cdot a + (-1) \cdot a.$$

Thus

$$0 \cdot a = a + (-1) \cdot a$$

i.e.

$$0 = a + (-1)a$$

Thus by definition of  $-a$ ,

$$(-1)a = -a$$

A similar argument yields  $a(-1) = -a$

(iii) By definition of  $-(-a)$ ,

$$-a+(-(-a)) = 0$$

But by definition of  $-a$ ,

$$-a+a = 0$$

Hence  $-(-a) = a$  as  $A$  is a group under addition.

(iv) Assume  $ab = 0$  and that  $a \neq 0$ . Then by axiom 4  $a^{-1} \in A - \{0\}$  exists such that

$$b = a^{-1}(ab) = a^{-1} \cdot 0 = 0 \text{ (by (i))}$$

Thus

$$b = 0.$$

Theorem 3.1 For all  $a, b \in A$ ,

$$(i) \quad (ba)a^{-1} = b \Rightarrow (ba)a = ba^2$$

$$(ii) \quad a^{-1}(ab) = b \Rightarrow a(ab) = a^2b$$

Proof:

(i) If  $a = 0$ , then

$$(ba)a = 0 = ba^2$$

and if  $a = -1$ , then

$$(ba)a = -(-b) = b \quad (\text{lemma 3.1})$$

$$\text{while} \quad ba^2 = b[(-1)(-1)] = b \quad (\text{lemma 3.1})$$

$$\text{so} \quad ba^2 = (ba)a \quad \text{for } a = 0, -1$$

Now assume that  $a \neq 0, -1$  and for arbitrary  $c \in A$ , consider

$$(ca)(a^{-1}-(a+1)^{-1})$$

(both  $a^{-1}$  and  $(a+1)^{-1}$  are defined as  $a \neq 0, -1$ )

By axiom 2,

$$\begin{aligned} (ca)(a^{-1}-(a+1)^{-1}) &= (ca)a^{-1}-(ca)(a+1)^{-1} \\ &= c-(ca)(a+1)^{-1}. \end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} [(ca)(a^{-1}-(a+1)^{-1})] (a+1) &= [c-(ca)(a+1)^{-1}](a+1) \\ &= c(a+1)-[(ca)(a+1)^{-1}](a+1) \\ &= c(a+1)-ca \\ &= ca+c-ca \\ &= c. \end{aligned}$$

Solving for  $ca$ , we obtain

$$ca = [c(a+1)^{-1}][a^{-1}-(a+1)^{-1}]^{-1} \quad \dots (1)$$

This holds for arbitrary  $c \in A$ . Hence in particular it is true if  $c = a+1$ . Substituting this in equation (1) we obtain

$$(a+1)a = [a^{-1}-(a+1)^{-1}]^{-1};$$

substituting this in equation (1) gives

$$ca = [c(a+1)^{-1}][(a+1)a] \quad \dots (2)$$

As  $c$  is arbitrary, set  $c = b(a+1)$  and substitute into equation (2). This gives

$$[b(a+1)]a = [\{b(a+1)\} (a+1)^{-1}] [(a+1)a]$$

or  $(ba+ba)a = ba^2+ba$

i.e.  $(ba)a+ba = ba^2+ba.$

As addition is a group, this implies

$$(ba)a = ba^2. \quad \dots (3)$$

As  $c$  was arbitrary in  $A$ , so is  $b$ , and thus equation (3) holds for all  $b, a \in A$ .



A completely analogous argument verifies (ii).

### ASSOCIATORS AND COMMUTATORS

Let  $a, b, c$  be three arbitrary elements of  $A$ . The associator  $[a, b, c]$  of the ordered triple  $(a, b, c)$  is defined to be the element  $(ab)c - a(bc)$ . The commutator  $[a, b]$  of the ordered pair  $(a, b)$  is defined to be the element  $ab - ba$ . Thus the associator is a function mapping  $A \times A \times A \rightarrow A$ , and the commutator is a function mapping  $A \times A \rightarrow A$ .

Lemma 3.2 The associator function is linear in each argument.

Proof: For arbitrary  $a, \bar{a}, b, c \in A$ , consider the associator  $[a + \bar{a}, b, c]$ . By definition

$$\begin{aligned} [a + \bar{a}, b, c] &= ((a + \bar{a})b)c - (a + \bar{a})(bc) \\ &= (ab + \bar{a}b)c - a(bc) - \bar{a}(bc) \\ &= (ab)c - a(bc) + (\bar{a}b)c - \bar{a}(bc) \\ &= [a, b, c] + [\bar{a}, b, c]. \end{aligned}$$

Thus the associator is linear in its first argument.

Similar reasoning yields that it is linear in its second and third arguments as well.

Lemma 3.3 If two arguments of an associator are the same, the associator is zero.

Proof: Let  $a$  and  $b$  be arbitrary elements of  $A$ .

Then  $[a, a, b] = (a^2)b - a(ab) = 0$  (theorem 3.1)

Similarly  $[b, a, a] = 0$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Thus} \quad 0 &= [a, b+a, b+a] \\
&= [a, b, b] + [a, b, a] + [a, a, b] + [a, a, a] \\
&\hspace{15em} (\text{by lemma 3.2});
\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Thus} \quad 0 = [a, b, a]$$

and the lemma holds.

Corollary: For all  $a, b \in A$ ,  $a(ba) = (ab)a$ ; for

$$0 = [a, b, a] = (ab)a - a(ba).$$

Lemma 3.4: Interchanging two arguments of an associator changes its sign.

Proof: Let  $a, b, c$  be arbitrary in  $A$ . By lemmas 3.2 and 3.3,

$$\begin{aligned}
0 &= [a+b, a+b, c] \\
&= [a+b, b+a, c] \\
&= [a, b, c] + [a, a, c] + [b, b, c] + [b, a, c] \\
&= [a, b, c] + [b, a, c].
\end{aligned}$$

Hence

$$[a, b, c] = -[b, a, c].$$

Similarly, by expanding  $[a, b+c, b+c]$  one obtains

$$[a, c, b] = -[a, b, c]$$

and by expanding  $[a+c, b, a+c]$  one obtains

$$[c, b, a] = -[a, b, c]$$

Lemma 3.5: For all  $a, b, c \in A$ ,

$$[a, b, c] - [a, c, b] + [c, a, b] = [ab, c] - a[b, c] + [a, c]b$$

Proof: Expanding the right-hand side of the above, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
&[ab, c] - a[b, c] + [a, c]b \\
&= (ab)c - c(ab) - a(bc) + a(cb) + (ac)b - (ca)b
\end{aligned}$$

$$= [a, b, c] - [a, c, b] + [c, a, b] = \text{left-hand side.}$$

Lemma 3.6 For all  $a, b, c, d \in A$ ,

$$[ab, c, d] - [a, bc, d] + [a, b, cd] = a[b, c, d] + [a, b, c]d$$

Proof: Upon expanding,

$$\begin{aligned} & [ab, c, d] - [a, bc, d] + [a, b, cd] \\ &= ((ab)c)d - (ab)(cd) - (a(bc))d + a((bc)d) + (ab)(cd) - a(b(cd)) \\ &= a((bc)d - b(cd)) + ((ab)c - a(bc))d \\ &= a[b, c, d] + [a, b, c]d. \end{aligned}$$

Theorem 3.2 Let  $A$  be an alternative field with commutative multiplication. Then if  $1+1+1 \neq 0$ , multiplication in  $A$  is associative.

Proof: Let  $a, b, c$  be arbitrary in  $A$ . By lemma 3.5,

$$[ab, c] = a[b, c] + [a, c]b + [a, b, c] - [a, c, b] + [c, a, b]$$

Applying lemma 3.4, this becomes

$$[ab, c] = a[b, c] + [a, c]b + 3[a, b, c]$$

(where  $3 = 1+1+1$ )

As  $A$  is commutative, all commutators are zero; hence

$$3[a, b, c] = 0$$

This implies, as  $3 \neq 0$ , that

$$[a, b, c] = 0;$$

that is,  $(ab)c = a(bc)$

As  $a, b, c$  are arbitrary,  $A$  is associative.

The "f" Function: Define a function  $f: A \times A \times A \times A \rightarrow A$

as follows: for arbitrary  $w, x, y, z \in A$ ,

$$f(w, x, y, z) = [wx, y, z] - [x, y, z]w - x[y, z, w]$$

Several properties of the "f" function follow.

Lemma 3.7 The function  $f$  is linear in each argument.

Proof: Let  $w, \bar{w}, x, y$ , and  $z$  be arbitrary in  $A$ , and consider

$$\begin{aligned}
 & f(w+\bar{w}, x, y, z) \\
 = & [(w+\bar{w})x, y, z] - [x, y, z] (w+\bar{w}) - x [y, z, w+\bar{w}] \\
 = & [wx+\bar{w}x, y, z] - [x, y, z] w + [x, y, z] \bar{w} - x [y, z, w] - x [y, z, \bar{w}] \\
 & \quad \text{(by lemma 3.2)} \\
 = & [wx, y, z] - [x, y, z] w - x [y, z, w] + [\bar{w}x, y, z] - [x, y, z] \bar{w} - x [y, z, \bar{w}] \\
 = & f(w, x, y, z) + f(\bar{w}, x, y, z).
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus  $f$  is linear in its first argument. The verification that it is linear in the other three arguments is similar.

Theorem 3.3 The  $f$  function is alternative; that is, interchanging any two of the arguments of  $f(w, x, y, z)$  changes the sign of  $f(w, x, y, z)$ .

Proof: Define a function  $S: A \times A \times A \times A \rightarrow A$  as follows:

for arbitrary  $w, x, y, z \in A$ ,

$$S(w, x, y, z) = f(w, x, y, z) - f(x, y, z, w) + f(y, z, w, x).$$

Upon expansion we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 S(w, x, y, z) = & [wx, y, z] - [x, y, z] w - x [y, z, w] \\
 & - [xy, z, w] + [y, z, w] x + y [z, w, x] \\
 & + [yz, w, x] - [z, w, x] y - z [w, x, y] \quad \dots \dots (1)
 \end{aligned}$$

However, by application of lemma 3.4 and lemma 3.5,

one obtains

$$\begin{aligned}
 & [wx, y, z] - [xy, z, w] + [yz, w, x] \\
 = & w [x, y, z] + [w, x, y] z
 \end{aligned}$$

Hence equation (1) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} S(w,x,y,z) &= w[x,y,z] + [w,x,y]z \\ &\quad - [x,y,z]w - x[y,z,w] + [y,z,w]x \\ &\quad + y[z,w,x] - [z,w,x]y - z[w,x,y]. \end{aligned}$$

Recalling the definition of the commutator, this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} S(w,x,y,z) &= [y, [z,w,x]] - [x, [y,z,w]] \\ &\quad - [z, [w,x,y]] + [w, [x,y,z]]. \end{aligned}$$

Cyclic permutation of the arguments of S gives

$$S(w,x,y,z) = -S(x,y,z,w).$$

Hence by definition of S,

$$\begin{aligned} &f(x,y,z,w) - f(y,z,w,x) + f(z,w,x,y) \\ &= -f(w,x,y,z) + f(x,y,z,w) - f(y,z,w,x). \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Thus} \quad f(z,w,x,y) = -f(w,x,y,z). \quad \dots\dots (2)$$

Also,

$$\begin{aligned} f(w,x,y,z) &= [wx,y,z] - [x,y,z]w - x[y,z,w] \\ &= -[wx,z,y] + [x,z,y]w + x[z,y,w] \\ &\quad \text{(using lemma 3.4);} \end{aligned}$$

$$f(w,x,y,z) = -f(w,x,z,y). \quad \dots\dots (3)$$

It is easily seen that equations (2) and (3) together imply that interchanging any two of the arguments of f changes the sign of f; for example,

$$\begin{aligned} f(w,x,y,z) &= -f(x,y,z,w) \\ &= f(y,z,w,x) \\ &= -f(y,z,x,w) \\ &= f(w,y,z,x); \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $f(w,x,y,z) = -f(w,y,x,z)$  by repeated use of equations (2) and (3).

Corollary I If two arguments of  $f$  are equal, then  $f = 0$ .

Corollary II (i) Since  $f(x,x,y,z) = 0$ , it follows that  $[x^2, y, z] = [x, y, z]x + x[y, z, x]$ .

(ii) Since  $f(z,x,y,z) = 0$ , it follows that  $[zx, y, z] = [x, y, z]z + x[y, z, z]$   
i.e.  $[zx, y, z] = [x, y, z]z$ .

(iii) Since  $f(w,x,y,x) = 0$ , it follows that  $[wx, y, x] = x[y, x, w] = x[w, y, x]$   
(by lemma 3.4).

Theorem 3.4 For arbitrary  $a, b, c \in A$ :

- (i)  $(ab)(ca) = a((bc)a)$
- (ii)  $((ab)a)c = a(b(ac))$
- (iii)  $(a(bc))a = (ab)(ca)$
- (iv)  $c(a(ba)) = ((ca)b)a$

Proof: (i)  $(ab)(ca) = a(b(ca)) + [a, b, ca]$   
 $= a(b(ca)) - [ca, b, a]$   
 $= a(b(ca)) - a[c, b, a]$  (from theorem 3.3, Corollary II, (iii)).  
 $= a(b(ca) + [b, c, a])$   
 $= a(b(ca) + (bc)a - b(ca))$

i.e.

- (ab)(ca) =  $a((bc)a)$
- (ii)  $((ab)a)c = [ab, a, c] + (ab)(ac)$   
 $= [b, a, c]a + (ab)(ac)$  (from Corollary II, (iii) above)

$$\begin{aligned}
&= [b, a, ac] + (ab)(ac) \\
&= (ab)(ac) - [a, b, ac] \\
&= (ab)(ac) - (ab)(ac) + a(b(ac))
\end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $((ab)a)c = a(b(ac))$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{(iii)} \quad (a(bc))a &= ((ab)c - [a, b, c])a \\
&= ((ab)c)a - [a, b, c]a \\
&= ((ab)c)a - [ab, c, a] \quad (\text{corollary II} \\
&\hspace{15em} \text{(ii) above}) \\
&= ((ab)c)a - ((ab)c)a + (ab)(ca)
\end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(a(bc))a = (ab)(ca)$

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{(iv)} \quad c(a(ba)) &= (ca)(ba) - [c, a, ba] \\
&= (ca)(ba) - [ba, c, a] \\
&= (ca)(ba) - a[b, c, a] \quad (\text{corollary II (iii)}) \\
&= (ca)(ba) + [ca, b, a] \\
&= (ca)(ba) + ((ca)b)a - (ca)(ba)
\end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $c(a(ba)) = ((ca)b)a$ .

These four identities are sometimes called the Moufang identities, after Ruth Moufang (Hall (5), page 424) who first enunciated them.

#### SOME ELEMENTARY PROPERTIES OF FIELDS

Some basic properties of finite fields are now stated. Proofs of these results can be found in van der Waerden.<sup>1</sup>

(1) A finite field  $F$  can be regarded as a vector space (of finite dimension, say  $n$ ) over the additive

---

<sup>1</sup>Van der Waerden, Modern Algebra, Vol. I, Ungar Publishing Company, 1953.

group generated by the element 1. As all finite fields have prime characteristic  $p$ , the order of a finite field  $F$  will be  $p^n$ .

(2) If  $F$  is a finite field of order  $p^n$ , then  $F - \{0\}$ , which will be denoted by  $F^*$ , is a multiplicative group of order  $p^n - 1$ .

(3) If  $K$  is a subfield of a finite field  $F$ , and if  $F$  has order  $p^n$ , then  $K$  has order  $p^m$  where  $m$  divides  $n$ .

(4) The intersection of two subfields of a field  $F$  is itself a subfield of  $F$ .

#### DEFINITION OF THE CENTRALIZER

For an arbitrary element  $x \in F$ , define the centralizer  $C_F(x)$  of  $x$  in  $F$  as follows:

$$C_F(x) = \{f \in F \mid xf = fx\} .$$

Lemma 3.8 Let  $F$  be a finite field. For arbitrary  $x \in F$ ,  $C_F(x)$  is a subfield of  $F$ .

Proof: Trivially  $0 \in C_F(x)$  and  $1 \in C_F(x)$ , for any  $x \in F$ .

To show that  $C_F(x)$  is a subfield of  $F$  it suffices to verify closure of addition and multiplication; the associativity of addition and multiplication and the commutativity of addition in  $C_F(x)$  then follow from the corresponding facts about  $F$ .

Let  $y$  and  $z$  be arbitrary elements of  $C_F(x)$ .

Then  $xy = yx$  ,  $yz = zy$ .

Thus  $(y+z)x = yx+zx$   
 $= xy+xz$

i.e.  $(y+z)x = x(y+z)$



and thus  $y+z \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$ .

Hence  $C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$  is closed under addition.

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned}(yz)x &= y(zx) = y(xz) \\ &= (yx)z = (xy)z\end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $(yz)x = x(yz)$

and thus  $yz \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$ .

Hence  $C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$  is closed under multiplication.

For a given  $z \in C_{\mathbb{F}}^*(x)$ , the mapping

$$\varphi_z: y \longrightarrow yz \quad (z, y \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x))$$

is a one-to-one mapping of  $C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$  onto  $C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$ .

Since  $1 \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$ , there exists  $\bar{z} \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$  such that  $\bar{z}z = 1$ ;

hence  $z^{-1} \in C_{\mathbb{F}}^*(x)$  if  $z \in C_{\mathbb{F}}^*(x)$ .

Similarly  $(-z) \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$  if  $z \in C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$ .

This completes the verification that  $C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)$  is a field.

### Theorem 3.5

Wedderburn's Theorem. Every finite field is a commutative field.

Proof: Let  $F$  be a finite field of order  $p^n$ , and let  $x$  be arbitrary in  $F$ . Let

$$|C_{\mathbb{F}}(x)| = p^{i_x}$$

and let

$$|Z(F)| = p^m.$$

Then for all  $x \in F$ ,  $i_x$  divides  $n$  and  $m$  divides  $i_x$ .

For arbitrary  $x \in F^*$ , define  $C_x$ , the conjugate class of the multiplicative group  $F^*$ , as

$$C_x = \{g^{-1}xg \mid g \in F^*\}.$$

Then  $F^*$  can be partitioned into disjoint conjugate classes, as it is easily verified that being in a given conjugate

class is an equivalence relation. Hence the order of  $F^*$  can be written as the sum of the orders of the conjugate classes of  $F^*$ ; this equality is called the class equation of  $F^*$ .

Now

$$|C_Z| = 1 \iff z \in Z^*(F).$$

Hence there are  $(p^m - 1)$  singleton conjugate classes of  $F^*$ .

Also, 
$$|C_x| = [F^* : C_F^*(x)];$$

for let  $C_F(x)g_1$  and  $C_F(x)g_2$  be two distinct cosets of  $C_F^*(x)$  in  $F^*$ , and let

$$\lambda_1 \in C_F^*(x)g_1, \lambda_2 \in C_F^*(x)g_2.$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \lambda_1^{-1}x\lambda_1 &= (fg_1)^{-1}x(fg_1), \quad f \in C_F^*(x) \\ &= g_1^{-1}f^{-1}xfg_1 \end{aligned}$$

i.e. 
$$\lambda_1^{-1}x\lambda_1 = g_1^{-1}xg_1.$$

Thus conjugation of  $x$  by any element from a given coset  $C_F^*(x)g_1$  yields the same conjugate  $g_1^{-1}xg_1$ .

However,  $\lambda_1^{-1}x\lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2^{-1}x\lambda_2$ ; for if this were not the case, then

$$g_1^{-1}xg_1 = g_2^{-1}xg_2$$

i.e. 
$$(g_1g_2^{-1})^{-1}x(g_1g_2^{-1}) = x$$

and thus 
$$g_1g_2^{-1} \in C_F(x),$$

contradicting the hypothesis that  $C_F^*(x)g_1$  and  $C_F^*(x)g_2$  were distinct cosets.

Hence 
$$|C_x| = [F^* : C_F^*(x)] = \frac{p^n - 1}{p^{1-x} - 1}$$

Thus the class equation for  $F$  is

$$p^n - 1 = p^{m-1} + \sum \frac{p^{n-1}}{p^{i_{x-1}}} \quad \dots\dots (1)$$

where the summation is over distinct conjugate classes of order  $> 1$ .

As  $m$  divides  $n$  and  $m$  divides  $i_x$  for all  $x$ , we can write

$$p^m = q$$

$$n = mr$$

$$i_x = mj_x, \quad \text{for all } x \in F^*$$

Then equation (1) becomes

$$q^r - 1 = q^{-1} + \sum \frac{q^{r-1}}{q^{j_{x-1}}} \quad \dots\dots (2)$$

Define  $\bar{\Phi}_r(q)$  by

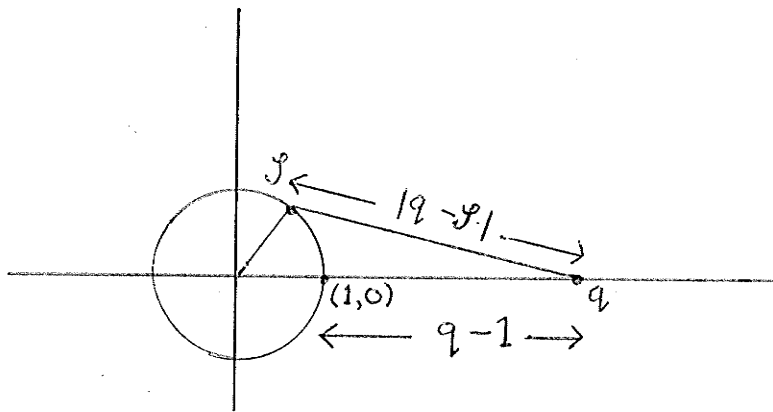
$$\bar{\Phi}_r(q) = \prod_i (q - \mathcal{J}_i),$$

where the product is taken over all the  $r$ th primitive roots  $\mathcal{J}_i$  of 1. Then  $\bar{\Phi}_r(q)$  divides  $q^r - 1$ . Also, since  $j_x < r$  for all  $x \in F^*$  (if we assume that  $Z^*(F) \neq F^*$ ),  $(q^{j_{x-1}})$  contains no factors of the form  $q - \mathcal{J}$ , where  $\mathcal{J}$  is an  $r$ th root of unity. Consequently  $\bar{\Phi}_r(q)$  divides  $\sum \frac{q^{r-1}}{q^{j_{x-1}}}$ . Hence from equation (2), it follows that

$$\bar{\Phi}_r(q) \text{ divides } (q-1) \quad \dots\dots (3)$$

Set up an Argand diagram of the complex plane, and consider the distribution of the  $r$ th primitive roots of unity about the unit circle. As  $q$  is a positive integer, it is seen that

$$|q - \mathcal{J}| > q - 1 \quad \text{for each root } \mathcal{J}.$$



However, result (3) implies that

$$\pi(q-J) \text{ divides } (q-1),$$

from which it follows that  $r = 1$ . Thus  $n = m$ , i.e.  $Z(F) = F$ , and as  $Z(F)$  is commutative by definition,  $F$  is commutative.

Theorem 3.6 Every finite alternative field  $K$  is a commutative field.

Proof: The proof can be broken into four main assertions:

(1) If  $a$  and  $b$  are arbitrary in  $K$ , then  $D = \{a, b, 1\}$  generates a finite subfield  $F$  of  $K$ .

(2) By theorem 3.5,  $F$  is a commutative field, and so  $ab = ba$ .

(3) As  $a$  and  $b$  were arbitrary in  $K$ ,  $K$  is commutative.

(4) A commutative alternative field is associative, and hence  $K$  is a commutative field.

Assertion (2) follows from (1), and (3) follows from (2), immediately. Hence it suffices to prove assertions (1) and (4).

To prove (1), some notation is first introduced.

If  $A, B$ , and  $C$  are subsets of  $K$ , then  $[A, B, C]$  is defined

$$\text{by } [A, B, C] = \{[a, b, c] \mid a \in A, b \in B, c \in C.\}$$

By the statement " $[A, B, C] = 0$ " we shall mean that

$$[a, b, c] = 0, \text{ for all } a \in A, b \in B, c \in C.$$

Define a subset  $X$  of  $K$  by

$$X = \{x \mid [D, D, x] = 0, x \in K\} \text{ (where } D \text{ is } \{a, b, 1\} \text{ as above).}$$

Then  $D \subseteq X$ ; for let  $[d_1, d_2, d_3] \in [D, D, D]$ .

If  $d_i = d_j$ ,  $i \neq j$  ( $i, j = 1, 2, 3$ ) then by lemma 3.3,

$[d_1, d_2, d_3] = 0$ . If  $d_1, d_2, d_3$  are distinct, then as  $D = \{a, b, 1\}$ , one of  $d_1, d_2, d_3$  is 1, and hence  $[d_1, d_2, d_3] = 0$

as any associator with 1 as one of its elements is zero.

Hence  $[D, D, D] = 0$  and thus  $D \subseteq X$ .

Secondly,  $DX \subseteq X$ ; for let  $[d_1, d_2, d_3 x]$  be arbitrary in  $[D, D, DX]$ . If  $d_1 = d_2$ , then  $[d_1, d_2, d_3 x] = 0$  by lemma 3.3. If  $d_1$  or  $d_2 = 1$ , then  $[d_1, d_2, d_3 x] = 0$  as above. Hence without loss of generality assume that  $d_1 = a$ ,  $d_2 = b$ .

If  $d_3 = 1$ , then  $[d_1, d_2, d_3 x] = 0$  by definition of  $X$ .

If  $d_3 = a$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} [d_1, d_2, d_3 x] &= [a, b, ax] \\ &= -[ax, b, a] \\ &= -[x, b, a]a \quad (\text{theorem 3.3, Corollary II, part (ii)}), \\ &= [a, b, x]a \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } [d_1, d_2, d_3 x] = 0$$

as  $[a, b, x] \in [D, D, X] = 0$

If  $d_3 = b$  the proof is similar. Hence in general

$$[D, D, DX] = 0 \text{ and so } DX \subseteq X.$$

Define a subset  $Y$  of  $K$  by

$$Y = \{y | y \in X, yX \subseteq X, [D, X, y] = 0.\}$$

Then  $D \subseteq Y$ . To verify this, suppose that  $[d_1, x, d_2]$  is arbitrary in  $[D, X, D]$ . Then

$$[d_1, x, d_2] = -[d_1, d_2, x] = 0$$

and thus  $[D, X, D] = 0$ . As  $D \subseteq X$  and  $DX \subseteq X$ , it follows that  $D \subseteq Y$ .

Define a subset  $R$  of  $K$  by

$$R = \{r | r \in Y, [X, Y, r] = 0.\}$$

Then  $D \subseteq R$ , as can be verified by the methods employed above. It follows that

$$D \subseteq R \subseteq Y \subseteq X.$$

In order to verify (1), it suffices to show that  $R$  is a field. By definition of  $X, Y$ , and  $R$ , it follows that  $0 \in R$  and  $1 \in R$ .

Addition is closed in  $R$ ; for if  $r_1 \in R$ ,  $r_2 \in R$ , then  $r_1 + r_2 \in R$  by the linear property of associators and the definitions of  $X, Y$ , and  $R$ .

Multiplication is closed in  $R$ , i.e.  $RR = R$ ; for if  $r_1$  and  $r_2$  are arbitrary in  $R$ , then as  $R \subseteq Y$  and  $R \subseteq X$ ,  $r_1 \in Y$  and  $r_2 \in X$ ; thus

$$r_1 r_2 \in yX \subseteq X,$$

and so  $r_1 r_2 \in R$ ; in general  $RR \subseteq R$ . Further, as  $[X, Y, R] = 0$ , we have

$$(r_1 r_2)X = r_1(r_2 X).$$

As  $r_2 \in Y$ ,  $r_2 X \subseteq X$  and so

$$(r_1 r_2)X \subseteq r_1 X \subseteq X \quad (\text{as } r_1 \in Y).$$

Also,  $r_1 r_2 \in X$ , so in order to show that  $r_1 r_2 \in Y$ , it remains to verify that  $[D, X, r_1 r_2] = 0$ . However,

$$\begin{aligned} [D, X, r_1 r_2] &= 0 \quad \text{if and only if} \\ [X, D, r_1 r_2] &= 0 \quad (\text{by lemma 3.3}) \end{aligned}$$

and this will certainly be true if

$$[X, Y, r_1 r_2] = 0 \quad \text{as } D \subseteq Y.$$

For arbitrary  $x \in X$ ,  $y \in Y$ , consider

$$f(y, x, r_1, r_2) = [yx, r_1, r_2] - [x, r_1, r_2]y - x[y, r_1, r_2].$$

As  $[X, Y, R] = 0$  and as  $R \subseteq Y \subseteq X$ , the last two associators are zero; also  $yx \in X$ , so by similar reasoning,

$$[yx, r_1, r_2] = 0. \quad \text{Hence}$$

$$f(y, x, r_1, r_2) = 0.$$

By theorem 3.3, this implies that

$$\begin{aligned} 0 &= f(r_1, r_2, y, x) \\ &= [r_1 r_2, y, x] - [r_2, y, x]r_1 - r_2[y, x, r_1] \end{aligned}$$

and by the alternative property of associators and the argument used above, one obtains

$$0 = [r_1 r_2, y, x] = -[x, y, r_1 r_2].$$

Hence

$$[X, Y, RR] = 0 \quad \text{so } RR \subseteq Y.$$

By the definition of  $R$  it immediately follows that  $RR = R$ , and so  $R$  is closed under multiplication.

Addition is associative and commutative in  $R$ , as it is in  $K$ . Also,

$$[R, R, R] \subseteq [X, Y, R] = 0$$

so multiplication in  $R$  is associative.

$$\text{Finally, } r \in R^* \implies r^{-1} \in R^*$$

$$\text{and } -r \in R \implies -r \in R$$

by the methods used to establish this in lemma 3.8.

Hence  $R$  is a field, and as  $D \subseteq R$ ,  $D$  generates a subfield of  $K$ .

This completes the proof of (1).

To prove (4), first note that by theorem 3.2, if  $1+1+1 \neq 0$  in  $K$ , then  $K$  is associative. Hence all that need be considered now is the case in which  $1+1+1 = 0$  (i.e.  $3 = 0$ ).

Let  $u, v$ , and  $a$  be arbitrary in  $K$ . Consider the element  $(uv)a^3$ . As  $\langle 1, uv, a \rangle$  is a field, and hence associative, it follows that

$$\begin{aligned} (uv)a^3 &= (uv)((a^2)a) \\ &= ((uv)(a^2))a \\ &= (a^2(uv))a \\ &= a^2((uv)a) \\ &= a(a((uv)a)) \\ &= a((au)(va)) && \text{(by theorem 3.4 (i))} \\ &= ((ua)(av))a \\ &= u(a((av)a)) && \text{(by theorem 3.4 (iv))} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } (uv)a^3 = u(va^3) \quad \dots (1)$$

(as  $\langle 1, v, a \rangle$  is a field).

Choose  $a, b, c$  arbitrary in  $K^*$ . Define  $d$  by



$$(ab)c = (a(bc))d.$$

As any two elements of  $K$ , plus the identity, generate a field, for arbitrary  $x, y \in K$  :

$$x^3 y^3 = (xy)^3.$$

Hence

$$\begin{aligned} (a^3 b^3) c^3 &= (ab)^3 c^3 = ((ab)c)^3 \\ &= ((a(bc))d)^3 \\ &= (a(bc))^3 d^3 \\ &= (a^3 (bc)^3) d^3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } (a^3 b^3) c^3 = (a^3 (b^3 c^3)) d^3.$$

By equation (1), expressions involving cubes as the third term are associative; hence

$$(a^3 b^3) c^3 = ((a^3 b^3) c^3) d^3$$

$$\text{and thus } d^3 = 1,$$

$$\text{i.e. } d^3 - 1 = 0.$$

As  $1+1+1 = 0$ ,  $d^3 - 1 = (d-1)^3$ , so

$$(d-1)^3 = 0,$$

$$\text{i.e. } d-1 = 0 \quad \text{or } d = 1.$$

Hence by the definition of  $d$ , for arbitrary  $a, b, c \in K$ ,

$$a(bc) = (ab)c; \quad \text{i.e. } K \text{ is associative.}$$

Hence  $K$  is a commutative field, and therefore every finite alternative field is a commutative field.

## CHAPTER IV

### GROUP THEORETICAL AND COMBINATORIAL THEOREMS

#### The Elementary Theory of Permutation Groups

In this section a brief outline of the basic ideas of the theory of permutation groups will be given, with particular reference to how the theory relates to collineation groups of projective planes. In addition, several special results that will be needed later are proved. For a detailed treatment of this subject reference should be made to Wielandt (14).

Let  $S$  be a finite set. The number of elements in a subset  $T$  of  $S$  will be denoted by  $|T|$  and will be called the order of  $T$ . A permutation of  $S$  is a one-to-one mapping of  $S$  onto itself. If  $g$  is a permutation of  $S$  and if  $s \in S$ , then the image of  $s$  under the permutation  $g$  will be written as  $s^g$ . If  $g$  and  $h$  are two permutations of  $S$ , their product  $gh$  is defined as the mapping sending  $s \rightarrow (s^g)^h$ . Then  $gh$  is a permutation if  $g$  and  $h$  are, and multiplication of permutations is associative.

A permutation group  $G$  on a set  $S$  is a group each of whose elements is a permutation of  $S$ . The identity permutation  $1$  fixes every element of  $S$  while the inverse  $g^{-1}$  of a permutation  $g$  is defined by writing

$$s^{g^{-1}} = t \iff t^g = s \quad \text{for all } s, t \in S.$$

Obviously  $g^{-1}$  is a permutation.

One subgroup of  $G$  deserves special mention. If  $T \subseteq S$ , then  $G_T$  is defined by

$$G_T = \{g \in G \mid t^g = t \text{ for all } t \in T\}.$$

Obviously  $G_T$  is a subgroup of  $G$  and thus also a permutation group of  $S$ . In particular  $T$  is the singleton set  $\{t\}$ , then  $G_t$  is called the stabilizer of  $t$ .

The order of  $G$  will be denoted by  $|G|$  and will always be assumed to be finite.

For arbitrary  $s \in S$ , the "orbit" of  $s$ , denoted  $\text{Orb } s$ , is defined as follows:

$$\text{Orb } s = \{s^g \mid g \in G\}.$$

Orbits are sometimes called "transitive classes" of  $S$  under  $G$ . The set of orbits of  $S$  under  $G$  forms a partition of  $S$  into disjoint sets. In general  $\text{Orb } (s) \subseteq S$ ; however, if for any  $s \in S$   $\text{Orb } (s) = S$ , then  $G$  is said to be "transitive" on  $S$ . Evidently  $G$  will be transitive on  $S$  if and only if for arbitrary  $\alpha, \beta \in S$ , there exists  $g \in G$  such that  $\alpha^g = \beta$ .

More generally, an action of an abstract group  $G$  on a given set  $S$  is defined as a function mapping  $S \times G$  onto  $S$  such that  $s^1 = s$  for all  $s \in S$  and such that  $(s^{g_1})^{g_2} = s^{g_1 g_2}$  for all  $s \in S$  and  $g_1, g_2 \in G$ . A given group  $G$  may have an action defined on more than one set, and the structure of  $G$  considered as a permutation group on one set may differ from the structure of  $G$

considered as a permutation group on another. As an example, a collineation of a projective plane has an action on two distinct sets, the set of points of the plane and the set of lines of the plane. If a group  $G$  has an action on a set  $S$ , it can be regarded as a permutation group of  $S$ .

Of basic importance is the "fundamental" theorem of permutation groups:

Lemma 4.1 Let a group  $G$  have an action on a set  $S$  and let  $\alpha$  be an arbitrary point of  $S$ . Then

$$|G_\alpha| |\text{Orb}(\alpha)| = |G|.$$

Proof: For arbitrary  $g_1, g_2 \in G$ , it is seen that

$$\alpha^{g_1} = \alpha^{g_2} \Leftrightarrow \alpha^{g_1 g_2^{-1}} = \alpha$$

i.e.

$$\Leftrightarrow g_1 g_2^{-1} \in G_\alpha$$

i.e.

$$\alpha^{g_1} = \alpha^{g_2} \Leftrightarrow g_1 \text{ and } g_2 \text{ are in the same}$$

right coset of  $G_\alpha$  in  $G$ . Hence the number of images of  $\alpha$  under  $G$  equals the number of right cosets of  $G_\alpha$  in  $G$ , i.e.

$$|\text{Orb}(\alpha)| = [G : G_\alpha] = \frac{|G|}{|G_\alpha|}.$$

Hence

$$|\text{Orb}(\alpha)| |G_\alpha| = |G|.$$

Lemma 4.2 Let a group  $G$  have an action on a set  $S$  and let  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  be two orbits of  $S$  under  $G$ . If  $|T_1|$  and  $|T_2|$  are relatively prime and if  $\delta_1 \in T_1$ , then  $G_{\delta_1}$  is transitive on  $T_2$ .

Proof: Let  $\delta_1 \in T_1$  and  $\delta_2 \in T_2$ . Then  $\text{Orb}(\delta_1) = T_1$  and  $\text{Orb}(\delta_2) = T_2$ . Hence by lemma 4.1,

$$|T_1| |G_{\delta_1}| = |G|$$

and  $|T_2| |G_{\delta_2}| = |G|$ .

Thus  $|T_1| |G_{\delta_1}| = |T_2| |G_{\delta_2}|$ . . . . . (1)

As  $|T_1|$  and  $|T_2|$  are relatively prime, this implies that integers  $k_1$  and  $k_2$  exist such that

$$|G_{\delta_1}| = k_2 |T_2|$$

and  $|G_{\delta_2}| = k_1 |T_1|$ .

Substitution into equation (1) gives

$$|T_1| k_2 |T_2| = |T_2| k_1 |T_1|$$

i.e.  $k_1 = k_2 = k$  (say).

But considering  $G_{\delta_1}$  as a permutation group on  $T_2$  and using lemma 4.1, if the orbit of  $\delta_2$  under  $G_{\delta_1}$  is denoted by  $\text{Orb } G_{\delta_1}(\delta_2)$ , it follows that

$$|\text{Orb } G_{\delta_1}(\delta_2)| |(G_{\delta_1})_{\delta_2}| = |G_{\delta_1}|. \quad \dots (2)$$

Similarly  $|\text{Orb } G_{\delta_2}(\delta_1)| |(G_{\delta_2})_{\delta_1}| = |G_{\delta_2}|. \quad \dots (3)$

Noting that  $(G_{\delta_1})_{\delta_2} = (G_{\delta_2})_{\delta_1}$  and dividing equation (2)

by equation (3), one obtains

$$\frac{|\text{Orb } G_{\delta_1}(\delta_2)|}{|\text{Orb } G_{\delta_2}(\delta_1)|} = \frac{|G_{\delta_1}|}{|G_{\delta_2}|} = \frac{k|T_2|}{k|T_1|} = \frac{|T_2|}{|T_1|}$$

i.e.  $|T_1| |\text{Orb } G_{\delta_1}(\delta_2)| = |T_2| |\text{Orb } G_{\delta_2}(\delta_1)|$ .

Thus as  $|T_1|$  and  $|T_2|$  are relatively prime, there exists an integer  $n$  such that

$$n|T_2| = |\text{Orb}_{G_{\delta_1}}(\delta_2)|$$

i.e.  $|T_2| = |\text{Orb}_{G_{\delta_1}}(\delta_2)|.$

As  $\text{Orb}_{G_{\delta_1}}(\delta_2) \subseteq T_2$ ,  $n = 1$  and thus  $\text{Orb}_{G_{\delta_1}}(\delta_2) = T_2.$

Hence by definition  $G_{\delta_1}$  is transitive on  $T_2.$

Lemma 4.3 Let a group  $G$  have an action on a set  $S$  and let  $H$  be a subgroup of  $G.$  Let

$$T = \{s \in S \mid s^h = s \text{ for all } h \in H\}.$$

Then  $N_G(H)$ , the normalizer of  $H$  in  $G,$  will permute the members of  $S$  amongst themselves.

Proof: Let  $n$  be arbitrary in  $N_G(H),$  let  $t$  be arbitrary in  $T,$  and let  $h_1$  be arbitrary in  $H.$

Then  $nh_1n^{-1} = h_2 \in H.$

Thus  ${}_tnh_1n^{-1} = {}_th_2 = t$  by definition of  $T.$

Hence  $({}_tn)h_1 = {}_tn.$

As  $h_1$  was arbitrary in  $H,$   ${}_tn \in T;$  as  $n$  was arbitrary in  $N_G(H),$   $N_G(H)$  permutes members of  $T$  amongst themselves.

Lemma 4.4 (see Gleason (4)) Let a group  $G$  have an action on a set  $S,$  and let  $T \subseteq S$  be such that for any  $t \in T,$  there exists  $g \in G$  of given prime order  $p$  such that  $g$  fixes  $t$  but no other element of  $S.$  Then  $T$  is contained in an orbit of  $S$  under  $G.$

Proof: Choose  $t \in T$  and  $g \in G$  as specified in the hypotheses, and let  $D$  be the orbit of  $S$  under  $G$  to which  $t$  belongs. Then  $\langle g \rangle,$  the group generated by  $g,$  is a permutation group of order  $p$  on  $D$  and partitions it into disjoint

orbits. The orbit of  $t$  has order one and the orbits of all other members of  $D$ , since none is fixed by  $g$ , will have order  $p$ . Hence

$$|D| = 1 + np \quad \dots\dots (1)$$

for some integer  $n$ .

If  $T \not\subseteq D$ , then there exists  $\bar{t} \in T \cap (S - D)$  and  $\bar{g} \in G$  such that  $\bar{t}\bar{g} = \bar{t}$  but all other elements of  $S$  are moved by  $\bar{g}$ . Thus in particular all elements of  $D$  are moved by  $\bar{g}$ , so the permutation group  $\langle \bar{g} \rangle$  partitions  $D$  into disjoint orbits each of order  $p$ . Hence  $|D|$  is divisible by  $p$ , which contradicts equation (1). Hence the assumption that such a  $\bar{t}$  exists is false and  $T \subseteq D$ .

### Definitions

(1) A permutation group  $G$  transitive on a set  $S$  is said to be regular on  $S$  if  $|G| = |S|$ .

(2) A permutation group  $G$  is said to be a Frobenius group on a set  $S$  if:

- a)  $G$  is transitive but not regular on  $S$ ,
- b) only the identity of  $G$  fixes two distinct elements of  $S$ .

(3) The kernel  $K$  of a Frobenius group  $F$  on a set  $S$  is defined as follows:

$$K = \{k \in F \mid s^k \neq s \text{ for all } s \in S\} \cup \{1\}.$$

(4) Let  $G$  be a permutation group transitive on a set  $S$ . Then  $G$  is said to be imprimitive if  $S$  can be partitioned into a collection  $\{T_i\}$  of disjoint sets,

each of the same order  $t$  where  $1 < t < |S|$ , such that each element of  $G$  maps any  $T_i$  either onto itself or onto another of the sets.  $G$  is said to be primitive on  $S$  if it is not imprimitive on  $S$ .

(5) A permutation group  $G$  on a set  $S$  is said to be doubly transitive on  $S$  if for arbitrary  $\alpha \in S$ ,  $G$  is transitive on  $S$  and  $G_\alpha$  is transitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ .

Definition A fixed-point-free automorphism  $\alpha$  of a finite group  $G$  is an automorphism of  $G$  such that  $g^\alpha = g \iff g = 1$  for all  $g \in G$ .

Lemma 4.5 If a finite group  $G$  has a fixed-point-free automorphism  $\alpha$  of order 2, then  $G$  is abelian.

Proof: First note that the mapping  $x \rightarrow x^{-1}x^\alpha$ ,  $x \in G$ , is one-to-one; for if  $x^{-1}x^\alpha = y^{-1}y^\alpha$  for  $x, y \in G$  then  $yx^{-1} = y^\alpha(x^\alpha)^{-1} = (yx^{-1})^\alpha$  and  $\alpha$  fixes  $yx^{-1}$ . Thus  $yx^{-1} = 1$ , i.e.  $y = x$  and the mapping is one-to-one as claimed. Hence as  $G$  is finite it is onto, so  $y_1, y_2 \in G \implies$  there exist  $x_1, x_2 \in G$  such that  $y_1 = x_1^{-1}x_1^\alpha$  and  $y_2 = x_2^{-1}x_2^\alpha$ , and  $x_1$  and  $x_2$  are unique. But  $y_1 = x_1^{-1}x_1^\alpha \implies y_1^\alpha = (x_1^{-1})^\alpha x_1^{\alpha^2} = (x_1^\alpha)^{-1}x_1 = y_1^{-1}$ ; consequently

$$(y_1 y_2)^\alpha = y_1^\alpha y_2^\alpha = y_1^{-1} y_2^{-1}.$$

But  $(y_1 y_2)^\alpha = (y_1 y_2)^{-1} = y_2^{-1} y_1^{-1}$ ;

hence  $y_1^{-1} y_2^{-1} = y_2^{-1} y_1^{-1}$  and taking inverses gives



$$y_1 y_2 = y_2 y_1.$$

As  $y_1$  and  $y_2$  were arbitrary in  $G$ ,  $G$  is abelian.

Lemma 4.6 (see Wagner (12)). Let  $F$  be a Frobenius group of order  $2n$  on a set  $S$  of order  $n$ , where  $n$  is odd.

Then:

(1) If  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are distinct elements of  $S$ , there exists  $f \in F$  such that  $f^2 = 1$  and  $\alpha^f = \beta$ .

(2) The kernel  $K$  of  $F$  is a characteristic subgroup of  $F$  and is regular on  $S$ .

(3) If  $H$  is a subgroup of  $F$  possessing  $r$  distinct elements of order 2, where  $r > 1$ , then  $|H| = 2r$ .

Proof: Any element  $f$  of order 2 in  $F$  interchanges elements of  $S$  in pairs, except for those elements that it fixes. As  $|S|$  is odd, this implies that  $f$  fixes at least one element of  $S$ . As  $F$  is a Frobenius group,  $f$  fixes no more than one element of  $S$ ; hence  $f$  fixes exactly one element of  $S$ . Thus to each element of order 2 in  $F$  there corresponds exactly one point of  $S$  fixed by it.

Conversely, for arbitrary  $\alpha \in S$ , by lemma 4.1

$$|\text{Orb}(\alpha)| |F_\alpha| = |F|.$$

As  $F$  is transitive on  $S$ ,  $|\text{Orb}(\alpha)| = n$ ; also  $|F| = 2n$ ; hence  $|F_\alpha| = 2$ . Thus there is, for each element  $\alpha \in S$ , exactly one element of  $F$  of order 2 fixing  $\alpha$ . Hence there is a one-to-one correspondence between points of

$S$  and elements of  $F$  of order 2. The element of order 2 in  $F$  that fixes  $\alpha \in S$  will be denoted  $f_\alpha$ .

Assertion (1) is now proved. Let  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  be distinct points of  $S$  and let  $\gamma \in S - \{\alpha\}$ . Then  $\alpha^{f_\gamma} \neq \alpha$  (as otherwise  $f_\gamma$  would fix both  $\alpha$  and  $\gamma$ , which contradicts  $F$  being Frobenius). Now suppose that for some  $\delta \in S$ ,  $\alpha^{f_\gamma} = \alpha^{f_\delta}$ . Then  $\alpha^{f_\gamma f_\delta} = \alpha$ , and

$$(\alpha^{f_\gamma})^{f_\gamma f_\delta} = \alpha^{f_\gamma^2} f_\delta = \alpha^{f_\delta} = \alpha^{f_\gamma},$$

so  $f_\gamma f_\delta$  fixes the distinct points  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha^{f_\gamma}$ .

Thus  $f_\gamma f_\delta = 1$ , i.e.  $f_\gamma = f_\delta$ , and by the one-to-one correspondence established above,  $\gamma = \delta$ . Hence  $\alpha^{f_\gamma} = \alpha^{f_\delta} \implies \gamma = \delta$ , and so as  $\gamma$  ranges over the  $(n-1)$  elements of  $S - \{\alpha\}$ ,  $\alpha^{f_\gamma}$  also ranges over these  $(n-1)$  elements; hence there must exist  $\gamma \in S - \{\alpha\}$  such that  $\alpha^{f_\gamma} = \beta$ , and as  $f_\gamma^2 = 1$ , assertion (1) holds.

To prove assertion (2), note that from the proof of (1)  $K$  consists of all elements of  $F$  that are not of order 2; hence  $|K| = 2n - n = n$ . No two elements of order 2 in  $F$  interchange the same two elements of  $S$ ; for suppose that  $x, y \in F$  (and  $x$  and  $y$  are of order 2) and that  $\alpha$  and  $\beta$  are distinct elements of  $S$  such that  $\alpha^x = \beta$ ,  $\alpha^y = \beta$ . Then  $\beta^x = \alpha$  and  $\beta^y = \alpha$ , and so  $\beta^{xy} = \alpha^y = \beta$ . Similarly  $\alpha^{xy} = \alpha$ , so  $xy$  fixes  $\beta$  and  $\alpha$ ; hence as  $F$  is Frobenius,  $xy = 1$ , i.e.  $x = y$ .

Let  $x_1, \dots, x_n$  be the  $n$  elements of order 2 in  $F$  and consider the set  $x_1 x_1, x_1 x_2, \dots, x_1 x_n$ . These are

$n$  distinct elements of  $F$  and none but  $x_1x_1 = 1$  fixes an element of  $S$ ; for if  $x_1x_p$  fixed  $\alpha$ , then both  $x_1$  and  $x_p$  would interchange  $\alpha$  and  $\alpha^{x_1}$ , in contradiction to the previous paragraph. Hence  $K = \{x_1x_1, \dots, x_1x_n\}$ . But similarly  $K = \{x_1x_1, x_2x_1, \dots, x_nx_1\}$ ; thus if  $k_1, k_2 \in K$  then  $k_1 = x_px_1$  and  $k_2 = x_1x_q$  for  $1 \leq p \leq n$ ,  $1 \leq q \leq n$  and  $k_1k_2 = x_px_q \in K$  by the characterization of  $K$ . Hence  $K$  is closed under multiplication, and is thus a group. Evidently  $K$  is normal in  $F$ , and as it consists of all elements not of order 2 (plus the identity), it is characteristic in  $F$ . As no element of  $K$  (other than 1) fixes an element of  $S$  and  $|K| = |S|$ , it follows that  $K$  is regular on  $S$ .

To prove assertion (3), let  $f_\gamma$  be an element of order 2 in  $H$  (as  $H$  is a subgroup of  $F$ , all elements of order 2 in  $H$  will be of this form). Let  $T$  be the orbit of  $S$  under  $H$  containing  $\gamma$ , and let  $|T| = c$ . As  $f_\gamma$  fixes  $\gamma \in T$  and interchanges other elements of  $T$  in pairs,  $c$  is odd. Now  $|H_\gamma| \geq 2$  as  $H_\gamma$  contains both 1 and  $\gamma$ ; however  $|H_\gamma| \leq |F_\gamma| = 2$ . Hence  $|H_\gamma| = 2$ . But by lemma 4.1,

$$|\text{Orb } \gamma| |H_\gamma| = |H|$$

and thus  $|H| = 2c$ .

Now consider the action of  $H$  on  $T$ . Only the identity of  $H$  fixes more than one point of  $T$ , as  $H$  is a subgroup of a Frobenius group; also,  $H$  is transitive but

not regular on  $T$ , and  $|H| = 2c$  while  $|T| = c$ , where  $c$  is odd. Hence the same hypotheses hold on  $H$  and  $T$  as hold on  $F$  and  $S$ . Consequently there is a one-to-one correspondence between elements of  $T$  and elements of order 2 of  $H$ . Thus there are  $c$  elements of order 2 in  $H$ , i.e.  $r = c$ , and thus  $|H| = 2r$ .

Lemma 4.7 (see Wagner (12)) Let  $G$  be a doubly transitive permutation group on a set  $S$  consisting of  $(n+1)$  elements, where  $n$  is odd. Let  $\alpha \in S$  be such that  $G_\alpha$  contains a subgroup  $F_\alpha$  of even order which is a Frobenius group on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ . Then  $G_\alpha$  is primitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ .

Proof: For an arbitrary element  $\beta \in S$ , since  $G$  is transitive on  $S$  there exists  $g \in G$  such that  $\alpha^g = \beta$ . Then  $g^{-1}F_\alpha g$ , which will be denoted as  $F_\beta$ , is a subgroup of  $g^{-1}G_\alpha g = G_\beta$ , and is a Frobenius group on  $S - \{\beta\}$  (since  $F_\beta$  is isomorphic to  $F_\alpha$  and thus plays the same role vis-a-vis  $\beta$  as  $F_\alpha$  plays towards  $\alpha$ ).

Let  $K_\beta$  be the kernel of  $F_\beta$ . Then by lemma 4.6 part (2)  $K_\beta$  is a characteristic subgroup of  $F_\beta$  and is regular on  $S - \{\beta\}$ . Hence  $|K_\beta| = |S - \{\beta\}| = n$ . As  $|F_\beta|$  is even,  $F_\beta$  contains an element  $b$  of order 2; as  $|K_\beta|$  is odd,  $b \notin K_\beta$  and hence by definition of the kernel,  $b$  fixes an element of  $S - \{\beta\}$ .

Let  $\bar{F}_\beta$  be the group generated by  $K_\beta$  and  $b$ . As

$K_\beta$  is normal in  $F_\beta$  (being characteristic), a typical element  $f$  of  $\bar{F}_\beta$  is of the form  $f = b^r k$  where  $k \in K_\beta$  and  $r = 0$  or  $1$ . Hence  $|\bar{F}_\beta| = 2|K_\beta| = 2n$ . Also,  $\bar{F}_\beta$  is transitive on  $S - \{\beta\}$ , as it contains  $K_\beta$ , but is not regular, as it contains  $b \neq 1$  fixing an element of  $S - \{\beta\}$ . Only the identity of  $\bar{F}_\beta$  fixes two distinct elements of  $S - \{\beta\}$  as  $\bar{F}_\beta$  is a subgroup of the Frobenius group  $F_\beta$ ; hence  $\bar{F}_\beta$  is a Frobenius group on  $S - \{\beta\}$ .

Now assume that  $G_\alpha$  is not primitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ . Then  $S - \{\alpha\}$  can be partitioned into sets of imprimitivity  $T_1, T_2, \dots, T_s$ , each of order  $t$  where  $1 < t < n$ . Then  $st = n$ , and as  $n$  is odd, so are  $s$  and  $t$ . Let  $T_1 = \{\delta_i | i = 1 \text{ to } t\}$  and let  $\gamma \in T_s$ . As  $\bar{F}_\gamma$  is a Frobenius group on a set  $S - \{\gamma\}$  of odd order  $n$ , as  $\alpha \neq \gamma$  and  $\beta_i \neq \gamma$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $t$ , and as  $|\bar{F}_\gamma| = 2n$ , the hypotheses of part (1) of lemma 4.5 hold and so there exists a set of elements of  $\bar{F}_\gamma$ , namely  $\{c_i | i = 1 \text{ to } t\}$ , such that  $c_i^2 = 1$  and  $\alpha^{c_i} = \beta_i$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $t$ .

Let  $T_1 \cup \{\alpha\} = V$ . Then  $V^{c_i} = V$  for  $i = 1$  to  $t$ . To prove this, note first that  $\alpha^{c_i} = \beta_i \in V$  for  $i = 1$  to  $t$ . Now suppose that there exist  $j$  and  $k$ ,  $1 \leq j \leq t$  and  $1 \leq k \leq t$ , such that  $\beta_k^{c_j} = \delta$  and  $\delta \notin V$ . But as  $\bar{F}_\delta$  is a Frobenius group of order  $2n$  on the set  $S - \{\delta\}$  of order  $n$  ( $n$  odd), and as  $\alpha, \beta_j \neq \delta$  (since  $\delta \notin V$ ), by lemma 4.6, part (1), there exists  $d \in \bar{F}_\delta$  such

that  $d^2 = 1$  and  $\alpha^d = \beta_j$ . Thus  $\alpha^{c_j d} = \beta_j^d = \alpha$ , and hence  $c_j d \in G_\alpha$ . But  $\beta_j^{c_j d} = \alpha^d = \beta_j$ , so as  $G_\alpha$  is imprimitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$  by assumption and  $c_j d$  fixes  $\beta_j \in T_1$ ,  $c_j d$  should map  $T_1$  onto  $T_1$ . However,  $\beta_k \in T_1$  and  $\beta_k^{c_j d} = \delta^d = \delta$ ; hence as  $\delta \notin T_1$ ,  $c_j d$  does not map  $T_1$  onto  $T_1$ . This contradiction implies that the assumed  $j$  and  $k$  do not exist and hence  $V^{c_i} = V$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $t$ , as claimed.

Let  $H$  be the subgroup of  $\bar{F}_\gamma$  generated by the  $\{c_i\}$ . Also,  $H$  maps  $V$  onto itself by the above remarks, and from the way in which the  $\{c_i\}$  were defined,  $H$  is transitive on  $V$ . Also, as  $\bar{F}_\gamma$  is a Frobenius group on  $S - \{\gamma\}$ , each non-identity element of  $H$  either fixes no point of  $S - \{\gamma\}$  or has order 2 and fixes precisely one point of  $S - \{\gamma\}$  (as recall  $|S - \{\gamma\}| = n$  and  $|\bar{F}_\gamma| = 2n$ ). But  $|V| = t+1$  and as  $t$  is odd,  $t+1$  is even. Thus no element of order 2 in  $H$  can fix any point of  $V$ . Hence  $|H_{\beta_i}| = 1$  and  $|H_\alpha| = 1$ . Thus by the fundamental theorem,  $|H| = t+1$ . But by lemma 4.6, part (3), as  $H$  possesses at least  $t$  elements of order 2, namely the  $\{c_i\}$ , it follows that  $|H| \geq 2t$ . Thus

$$t+1 \geq 2t, \quad \text{i.e. } 1 \geq t$$

which contradicts the assumption that  $t > 1$ . Hence the assumption that  $G_\alpha$  is imprimitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$  is false;

i.e.  $G_\alpha$  is primitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ .

Lemma 4.8 Let  $G$  be a permutation group primitive on a set  $S$  and let  $N$  be a non-trivial normal subgroup of  $G$ . Then  $N$  is transitive on  $S$ .

Proof: As  $N$  is a permutation group on  $S$  it partitions  $S$  into disjoint orbits. Let  $\alpha$  be arbitrary in  $S$  and let  $g$  be arbitrary in  $G$ . Let  $\alpha^g = \beta$ . If the orbit of  $\alpha$  under  $N$  is denoted  $\text{Orb}_N \alpha$ , then  $(\text{Orb}_N \alpha)^g = \text{Orb}_N \beta$ ; for let  $\gamma \in \text{Orb}_N \alpha$ . Then there exists  $n \in N$  such that  $\alpha = \gamma^n$ . Thus  $\alpha^g = \gamma^{ng}$ . But as  $N$  is normal, there exists  $\bar{n} \in N$  such that  $ng = g\bar{n}$ . Hence

$$\beta = \alpha^g = \gamma^{ng} = (\gamma^g)^{\bar{n}}$$

and thus  $\gamma^g \in \text{Orb}_N \beta$ . Hence  $(\text{Orb}_N \alpha)^g \subseteq \text{Orb}_N \beta$ , and by reversing the argument,  $(\text{Orb}_N \beta) \subseteq (\text{Orb}_N \alpha)^g$ . Thus  $|\text{Orb}_N \beta| = |(\text{Orb}_N \alpha)^g| = |\text{Orb}_N \alpha|$ . Evidently each  $g \in G$  maps each orbit either onto itself or onto another orbit. As orbits are disjoint, they form sets of imprimitivity of  $G$  of order  $> 1$  (as  $|N| > 1$ ). Hence as  $G$  is imprimitive,  $\text{Orb}_N \alpha = S$  and hence  $N$  is transitive on  $S$ .

Theorem 4.1 Let  $G_\alpha$ ,  $F_\alpha$ , and  $K_\alpha$  be as in lemma 4.7, and in addition assume that  $F_\alpha$  is normal in  $G_\alpha$ . Then  $K_\alpha$  is an elementary abelian group and thus  $n$  is a power of a prime.

Proof: As  $K_\alpha$  is characteristic in  $F_\alpha$ , it is normal in

$G_\alpha$ . As  $|F_\alpha|$  is even and  $|K_\alpha| = n$  and thus is odd,  $F_\alpha$  contains an element  $f$  of order 2 not in  $K_\alpha$ . By definition of  $K_\alpha$  there exists  $\beta \in S - \{\alpha\}$  such that  $\beta^f = \beta$ . Then  $k \rightarrow f^{-1}kf$  for all  $k \in K_\alpha$  is a fixed-point-free automorphism of  $K_\alpha$ ; for if not then there exists  $k \in K_\alpha$ ,  $k \neq 1$ , such that  $fk = kf$  (as  $f^{-1} = f$ ). Then  $\beta^{fk} = \beta^{kf}$  and so  $\beta^k = (\beta^k)^f$ . Thus  $f$  fixes the distinct points  $\beta$  and  $\beta^k$  of  $S - \{\alpha\}$  in contradiction to the fact that  $F_\alpha$  is a Frobenius group on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ . Hence  $K_\alpha$  has a fixed-point-free automorphism of order 2, so by lemma 4.5  $K_\alpha$  is abelian.

Now  $K_\alpha$  has no proper non-trivial characteristic subgroups; for let  $N$  be such a group. Then  $|N| < |K_\alpha| = n$ . Then as  $K_\alpha$  is normal in  $G_\alpha$ ,  $N$  is normal in  $G_\alpha$ . But as  $G_\alpha$  is primitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ , by lemma 4.8  $N$  is transitive on  $S - \{\alpha\}$ . This contradicts the fact that  $|N| < n$ , and so  $K_\alpha$  has no proper characteristic subgroups.

Assume that  $p$  is a prime  $> 1$  dividing  $|K_\alpha|$ . Then  $|K_\alpha| = p^r$ ; for if not,  $K_\alpha$  would have a  $p$ -Sylow subgroup  $P$  properly contained in it. As  $K_\alpha$  is abelian,  $P$  would be characteristic in  $K_\alpha$ , contradicting the result of the previous paragraph.

Lastly, all non-identity elements of  $K_\alpha$  have order  $p$ ; for as  $K_\alpha$  is abelian, the set  $K_\alpha^P = \{k^P \mid k \in K_\alpha\}$  is a proper characteristic subgroup of  $K_\alpha$ , and hence



is the identity. Hence  $k^p = 1$  for all  $k \in K_\alpha$ , and thus  $K_\alpha$  is elementary abelian of order  $n = p^r$  for some prime  $p$ .

The following lemmas and theorems are due to Gleason (4). Proofs are also given in Pickert (8), pages 26-28.

Lemma 4.9 Let  $l$  be a line and  $C$  be a point (incident with  $l$ ) of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  of order  $n$ . Denote the group of all elations with centre  $C$  and axis  $l$  as  $G_{C,l}$  and the group of all elations with axis  $l$  as  $G_l$ . Then:

- (1)  $|G_{C,l}|$  divides  $n$
- (2)  $|G_l|$  divides  $n^2$
- (3)  $|G_l| = n^2 \iff \pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $l$ .

Proof: (1) Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $C$  ( $m \neq l$ ). Then as each element of  $G_{C,l}$  fixes  $m$ ,  $G_{C,l}$  acts as a permutation group on the  $n$  points of  $S = m - \{C\}$  (where  $m$  is thought of as a point set). By lemma 1.4, if  $Q \in S$  and  $g \in G_{C,l}$ , then  $Q$  and  $Qg$  uniquely determine the element  $g$ . Hence  $|\text{Orb } Q| = |G_{C,l}|$ . By lemma 4.1,  $|\text{Orb } Q|$  divides  $|S|$  and hence  $|G_{C,l}|$  divides  $n$ .

(2) The  $n^2$  points of  $P - \{l\} = T$  (where  $l$  is taken as a point set) are permuted amongst themselves

by elements of  $G_\ell$ , and hence  $G_\ell$  acts as a permutation group on  $T$ . By the argument used in (1), if  $Q \in T$  then  $|\text{Orb } Q| = |G_\ell|$ . By lemma 4.1,  $|\text{Orb } Q|$  divides  $|T|$  and hence  $|G_\ell|$  divides  $n^2$ .

(3) Suppose that  $|G_\ell| = n^2$ . Then  $|\text{Orb } Q| = n^2$  for an arbitrary point  $Q \in T$ . Hence as  $|T| = n^2$ , if  $Q$  and  $R$  are any two points of  $T$  there exists  $g \in G_\ell$  such that  $Q^g = R$ . But this clearly implies that  $\pi$  is  $(C, \ell)$ -transitive for all  $C \in \ell$ ; i.e. that  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Conversely, if  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  and if  $Q$  and  $R$  are arbitrary in  $T$ , then there exists an element  $g$  in  $G_\ell$  such that  $Q^g = R$ . Thus  $|\text{Orb } Q| = n^2$ , but as  $|\text{Orb } Q| = |G_\ell|$  it follows that  $|G_\ell| = n^2$ .

Lemma 4.10 Let  $\ell$  be a line of a projective plane  $\pi$  of order  $n$ . If for each point  $C \in \ell$  the elation group  $G_{C, \ell}$  has order  $m > 1$ , then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Proof: Let  $|G_\ell| = r$ . By part (2) of the preceding lemma,  $rk = n^2$  for some integer  $k > 0$ . By lemma 1.5

Corollary II,  $G_\ell = \bigcup_{C \in \ell} G_{C, \ell}$ , and evidently

$|G_{C_1, \ell} \cap G_{C_2, \ell}| = 1$  if  $C_1 \neq C_2$ , so

$$|G_\ell| = (n+1)(|G_{C, \ell}| - 1) + 1$$

i.e.

$$r = (n+1)(m-1) + 1.$$

As  $m > 1$ ,  $r > n$  and hence  $k < n$ .

Since  $kr = n^2$ , it follows that

$$n^2 - k = (r-1)k = (n+1)(m-1)k$$

i.e.  $k = n^2 - (m-1)(n+1)k$

or  $k-1 = n^2 - 1 - (m-1)(n+1)k$   
 $= (n+1)((n-1) - (m-1)k).$

Thus  $(n+1)$  divides  $(k-1)$ . As  $k < n$ , this implies that  $k-1 = 0$ , i.e.  $k = 1$ . Hence  $r = n^2$  and by part (3) of the preceding lemma,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Lemma 4.11 Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane possessing a line  $\ell$  with the following properties: for each  $C \in \ell$ ; (1) there exists a non-trivial  $(C, \ell)$ -elation, (2) there exists a line  $m$ ,  $C \in m$  and  $m \neq \ell$ , such that there exists a non-trivial  $(C, m)$ -elation.

Then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Proof: By theorem 1.1 and hypothesis (1), every non-trivial elation with axis  $\ell$  has the same prime order  $p$ . For a fixed point  $C \in \ell$  denote  $\bigcup_{C \in m} G_{C, m}$ , the set of all elations with centre  $C$ , by  $G_C$ . By the dual of Corollary II of lemma 1.5,  $G_C$  is a group. By the hypotheses and the dual of theorem 1.1,  $G_C$  will be an elementary abelian  $p$ -group for each  $C \in \ell$ .

Let  $H$  be the group generated by all non-trivial  $(C, m)$ -relations, of the type described in hypothesis (2), for each  $C \in \ell$ . Then each element of  $H$  fixes the line  $\ell$ , and so  $H$  acts as a permutation group on the points of  $\ell$ . Also, for each  $C \in \ell$  there exists an element of  $H$  of order  $p$  that fixes  $C$  but no other point of  $\ell$  (namely the non-trivial  $(C, m)$ -relation for that  $C$ ); hence by lemma 4.4  $H$  is transitive on the points of  $\ell$ . Thus if  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are arbitrary distinct points of  $\ell$  there exists  $h \in H$  such that  $C_1^h = C_2$ . By lemma 1.6,  $G_{C_2, \ell} = h^{-1}(G_{C_1, \ell})h$ . Thus  $|G_{C_2, \ell}| = |G_{C_1, \ell}| > 1$  and as  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  were arbitrary on  $\ell$ , it follows by lemma 4.10 that  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Definition Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane. Then the collineation group generated by all elations of  $\pi$  is called the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

Theorem 4.2 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  such that for every line  $\ell$  and point  $C$  such that  $C \in \ell$ ,  $G$  possesses a non-trivial  $(C, \ell)$ -relation. Then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$  as a subgroup.

Proof: From the hypotheses, every line of  $\pi$  satisfies the conditions imposed on the line  $\ell$  in lemma 4.11. Hence from lemma 4.11  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to every line of  $\pi$ , i.e.  $\pi$  is an alternative plane. As  $\pi$  is finite, from the conclusions of Chapter III it follows that  $\pi$  is Desarguesian. Evidently the elations in  $G$  generate all possible elations of  $\pi$  so  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

The following result is due to Andre (1).

Theorem 4.3 Let  $\gamma$  be a line of a projective plane  $\pi$  and let  $\sigma$  be the axis of two non-trivial homologies  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  with distinct centres  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  respectively. Let  $G$  be the group generated by  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ . Then:

- (1) All elements of  $G$  are central collineations with axis  $\gamma$ .
- (2)  $G$  has an action on the points of  $\pi - \{\gamma\}$  and the set of centres of the homologies in  $G$  is contained in one orbit of  $G$ .
- (3) There is an elation in  $G$  mapping  $C_1$  into  $C_2$ .

Proof: Result (1) follows immediately from the fact that every element of  $G$  fixes  $\gamma$  pointwise.

Let  $C_1C_2 = \ell$  and let  $F$  be the group of elations of  $G$  with centre  $\ell \cap \gamma$ . It is easily verified that  $F$  is a normal subgroup of  $G$ . Let  $|F| = t$ .

Regarding  $G$  as a permutation group on the points of  $\pi-\{\mathcal{X}\}$ , let  $\{T_i | i = 1 \text{ to } N\}$  be the orbits of  $\pi-\{\mathcal{X}\}$  under  $G$ . Regarding  $F$  as a permutation group on  $\pi-\{\mathcal{X}\}$ , it is seen that  $F$  fixes each  $T_i$  and hence can be regarded as a permutation group on  $T_i$ .  $F$  thus splits each  $T_i$  into orbits, each of which has length  $t$  since an element  $f \in F$  is uniquely determined by  $P$  and  $P^f$  for any point  $P \in \pi-\{\mathcal{X}\}$ .

Let  $t_i$  be the number of orbits of  $T_i$  under  $F$ . Then  $tt_i = |T_i|$  and as there are  $N$  orbits of the  $n^2$  points of  $\pi-\{\mathcal{X}\}$  under  $G$ , it follows that

$$n^2 = \sum_{i=1}^N tt_i \quad \dots\dots (1)$$

Let  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  be two points in the same orbit of  $\pi-\{\mathcal{X}\}$  under  $G$ . Then  $\text{Orb } P_1 = \text{Orb } P_2$  and by the fundamental theorem it immediately follows that  $|G_{P_1}| = |G_{P_2}|$ . But  $G_{P_1}$ , the set of elements that fix  $P_1$ , is just the set of homologies with centre  $P_1$  (plus the identity). Thus the number of homologies with centre  $P_1$  equals the number of homologies with centre  $P_2$ , and hence without ambiguity the number of homologies (including the identity) whose centre is a given point in  $T_i$  can be denoted  $s_i$ .

Let  $|G| = k$ . As  $G$  can be partitioned into  $F \cup (G-F)$ , where  $G-F$  is the set of all homologies in  $G$  (excepting the identity), we can write

$$|G| = |F| + |G-F|$$

i.e.  $k = t + \sum_{i=1}^N tt_i(s_i-1) \dots (2)$

where  $tt_i(s_i-1)$  is evidently the number of homologies in  $G$  with centres in  $T_i$ .

Let  $C \in T_i$ . Then applying the fundamental theorem,

$$|\text{Orb } C| |G_C| = |G|$$

i.e.  $tt_i s_i = k \dots (3)$

Substituting this in equation (2) gives

$$k = t + \sum_{i=1}^N k - \sum_{i=1}^N tt_i.$$

Combining this with equation (1) gives

$$k = t + Nk - n^2$$

i.e.  $k(N-1) = n^2 - t$

so by equation (3),

$$tt_i s_i (N-1) = n^2 - t$$

i.e.  $(N-1)(t_i s_i) = n^2 t^{-1} - 1.$

Summing over the  $N$  orbits, this becomes

$$\frac{N-1}{n^2 t^{-1} - 1} \sum_{i=1}^N t_i = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{s_i}.$$

Using equation (1) this becomes

$$\left( \frac{N-1}{n^2 t^{-1} - 1} \right) \left( \frac{n^2}{t} \right) = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{s_i}$$

i.e.  $\frac{N-1}{1 - \frac{t}{n^2}} = \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{s_i} \dots (4)$

Now the left-hand side, and hence the right-hand side, of equation (4) is greater than  $(N-1)$ ,

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{s_i} > N-1. \quad \dots\dots (5)$$

Suppose that  $s_i \geq 2$  for  $i = 1$  to  $m$  and that  $s_i = 1$  for  $i = (m+1)$  to  $N$ . Then  $m \geq 1$  as the number of homologies with centre  $C_1$  is  $\geq 2$  as  $\sigma_1$  and the identity are two such. Thus  $\frac{1}{s_i} \leq \frac{1}{2}$  for  $i = 1$  to  $m$  and so

$$\sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{s_i} \leq \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{2} = \frac{m}{2} \quad \dots\dots (6)$$

As  $s_i = 1$  for  $i = (m+1)$  to  $N$ , it follows that

$$\sum_{i=m+1}^N \frac{1}{s_i} = N-m.$$

Consequently

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{i=1}^m \frac{1}{s_i} &= \sum_{i=1}^N \frac{1}{s_i} - \sum_{i=m+1}^N \frac{1}{s_i} \\ &> (N-1) - (N-m) \quad (\text{using result (5)}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \frac{m}{2} > m-1 \quad (\text{using result (6)}).$$

Thus  $m > 2m-2$ , and so  $2 > m$ . But as  $m \geq 1$ , it follows that  $m = 1$ . Hence only one orbit of  $\pi-\{\chi\}$  under  $G$ , namely  $T_1$ , is such that a point  $P$  of that orbit is the centre of more than one homology. Hence the centres of the non-trivial homologies are all contained in one orbit  $T_1$  of  $\pi-\{\chi\}$  under  $G$  and the second claim is



true.

Setting  $i = 1$  in equation (3) and substituting in equation (2), we obtain

$$tt_1s_1 = t+t \sum_{i=1}^n t_i (si^{-1}).$$

As  $s_i = 1$  for  $i > 1$ , this becomes

$$t_1s_1 = 1+t_1s_1-t_1$$

i.e.  $t_1 = 1$ .

Hence recalling the definition of  $t_1$ , the orbit  $T_1$  has only one suborbit under  $F$ ; i.e.  $F$  is transitive on  $T_1$ . Hence as  $C_1$  and  $C_2 \in T_1$ , there is an elation in  $F$  sending  $C_1$  into  $C_2$ . Hence result (3) holds.

Theorem 4.4 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$ .

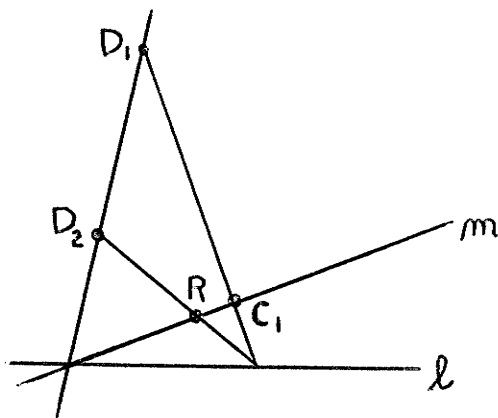
Then:

(1) If  $l$  and  $m$  are distinct lines of  $\pi$  such that for every point  $C \in m$  ( $C \neq l \cap m$ ) there exists a non-trivial  $(C, l)$ -homology in  $G$ , then  $\pi$  is  $(l \cap m, l)$ -transitive.

(2) If  $l$  is a line such that  $C \notin l \Rightarrow$  there exists a non-trivial  $(C, l)$ -homology, then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $l$ .

(3) If for every point  $C$  and line  $l$  of  $\pi$ ,  $C \notin l$ , there exists a non-trivial  $(C, l)$ -homology in  $G$  then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

Proof: (1) Let  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  be arbitrary distinct points of  $m - \{\ell \cap m\}$  and let them be centres of non-trivial homologies  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  (respectively) of  $G$ . By



theorem 4.3  $G$  contains an elation  $\varphi$  such that

$$C_1^\varphi = C_2.$$

Let  $D_1$  and  $D_2$  be arbitrary points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$  such that

$$\equiv D_1, D_2, \ell \cap m.$$

Then let

$$(D_1 C_1 \cap \ell) D_2 \cap m = R.$$

There is an elation mapping  $C_1 \rightarrow R$  and under this  $D_1 \rightarrow D_2$ . Hence  $\pi$  is  $(\ell, \ell \cap m)$ -transitive.

(2) From (1) it immediately follows that  $\pi$  is  $(P, \ell)$ -transitive for every  $P \in \ell$ , and hence  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

(3) From (2) it immediately follows that  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to all lines of  $\pi$ , and hence is a finite alternative plane. Hence by the result of chapter 3,  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains all possible elations of  $\pi$  and hence the little projective group.

Lemma 4.12 Let  $\varphi$  be a collineation of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  of order  $n$ . Let  $N_\varphi$  be the number of points fixed by  $\varphi$  and  $\bar{N}_\varphi$  the number of lines fixed by  $\varphi$ . Then  $N_\varphi = \bar{N}_\varphi$ .

Proof: Define

$$K = \left\{ (P, \ell) \mid \begin{array}{l} P \text{ a point, } \ell \text{ a line,} \\ P \in \ell, P \in \ell^\varphi \end{array} \right\}.$$

Two expressions for the order of  $K$  are now calculated.

Each point  $P$  fixed by  $\varphi$  has  $(n+1)$  lines through it, and for each such line  $\ell$ ,  $P \in \ell$  and  $P \in \ell^\varphi$ . Each point  $Q$  not fixed by  $\varphi$  (there are  $(n^2+n+1)-N_\varphi$  of these) has exactly one line  $\ell$  through it, namely  $QQ^{\varphi^{-1}}$ , such that  $Q \in \ell$  and  $Q \in \ell^\varphi$ . Hence

$$|K| = N_\varphi(n+1) + (n^2+n+1-N_\varphi).$$

The dual argument gives

$$|K| = \bar{N}_\varphi(n+1) + (n^2+n+1-\bar{N}_\varphi)$$

and it immediately follows that  $N_\varphi = \bar{N}_\varphi$ .

Lemma 4.13 Let  $G$  be a permutation group on a set  $S$ , and let  $k$  be the number of orbits of  $S$  under  $G$ .

Then  $k|G| = \sum r f_r$

where  $f_r$  is the number of elements of  $G$  that fix  $r$  elements of  $S$ , and summation is over  $r$ .

Proof: Let  $|S| = n$ . Set up a matrix  $M = (m_{ij})$  with rows indexed by elements of  $G$  and columns indexed by elements of  $S$ . Then  $M$  has  $|G|$  rows and  $n$  columns.

Assign elements of  $M$  as follows:

$$m_{ij} = 1 \iff \alpha_j^{\mathcal{G}i} = \alpha_j$$

$$m_{ij} = 0 \iff \alpha_j^{\mathcal{G}i} \neq \alpha_j.$$

Let  $N$  be the total number of "1"s appearing in  $M$ . For  $r = 0, 1, 2, \dots$  the number of rows of  $M$  containing  $r$  "1"s is  $f_r$ ; hence as  $N$  is the sum over all rows of  $M$  of the number of "1"s in each row, it follows that

$$N = \sum_r r f_r \quad \dots\dots (1)$$

However, the number of "1"s appearing in a column of  $M$  indexed by  $\alpha \in S$  is the number of elements of  $G$  fixing  $\alpha$ , i.e. is  $|G_\alpha|$ . Thus

$$\sum_{\alpha \in S} |G_\alpha| = N \quad (\text{as } N \text{ is the sum over all columns}$$

of the number of "1"s in each column).

Let the  $k$  orbits of  $S$  under  $G$  be  $\{T_i \mid i = 1 \text{ to } k\}$

Then

$$\sum_{\alpha \in S} |G_\alpha| = \sum_{i=1}^k \left( \sum_{\alpha \in T_i} |G_\alpha| \right).$$

But by the fundamental theorem

$$\alpha_1 \in T_i, \alpha_2 \in T_i \implies |G_{\alpha_1}| = |G_{\alpha_2}|$$

and hence  $\sum_{\alpha \in T_i} |G_\alpha| = |\text{Orb } \alpha| |G_\alpha| = |G|$ .

Thus  $N = \sum_{\alpha \in S} |G_\alpha| = \sum_{i=1}^k |G| = k|G|$

so by equation (1),

$$\sum_r r f_r = k |G|.$$

**Theorem 4.5** Let  $G$  be a collineation group of a finite projective plane  $\pi$ . Then the number  $k$  of orbits of points of  $\pi$  under  $G$  equals the number  $\bar{k}$

of orbits of lines of  $\pi$  under  $G$ .

Proof: By lemma 4.13,

$$k|G| = \sum_r r f_r$$

where  $f_r$  is the number of elements in  $G$  that fix  $r$  points of  $\pi$ . Similarly

$$\bar{k}|G| = \sum_r r \bar{f}_r$$

where  $\bar{f}_r$  is the number of elements in  $G$  that fix  $r$  lines of  $\pi$ . But by lemma 4.12, if  $g \in G$  then  $g$  fixes  $r$  points of  $\pi$  if and only if  $g$  fixes  $r$  lines of  $\pi$ .

Thus for all  $r$ ,  $f_r = \bar{f}_r$ . Consequently

$$\sum_r r f_r = \sum_r r \bar{f}_r \text{ and so } k|G| = \bar{k}|G| ; \text{ hence } k = \bar{k}.$$

Definition: Let  $\pi = \{\mathcal{P}, \mathcal{L}, \varepsilon\}$  be a projective plane with point set  $\mathcal{P}$  and line set  $\mathcal{L}$ . Then a function  $\varphi$  mapping  $\mathcal{P}$  onto  $\mathcal{L}$  and  $\mathcal{L}$  onto  $\mathcal{P}$  such that  $P \varepsilon l \iff l \varphi \varepsilon P$  is called a correlation of  $\pi$ .

As  $\varphi$  is one-to-one onto, its inverse exists and is a correlation. Evidently  $\varphi^2$  is a collineation of  $\pi$ .

If  $\varphi$  is correlation such that  $\varphi^2 = 1$ , then  $\varphi$  is called a polarity of  $\pi$ . A point  $P$  is an absolute point of  $\varphi$  if  $P \varepsilon P^\varphi$ .

Theorem 4.6 (see Baer (2)) Every polarity  $\varphi$  of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  of order  $n$  possesses absolute points.

Proof: Define an  $m$ -cycle as an ordered  $m$ -tuple of points  $(P_1, \dots, P_m)$ , not all necessarily distinct, such that  $P_i \in P_{i+1}^\varphi$  for  $i = 1$  to  $(m-1)$  and  $P_m \in P_1^\varphi$ . Let  $Z_m$  be the number of ordered  $m$ -cycles of  $\varphi$ . Evidently the one point of a 1-cycle is an absolute point.

Let  $p$  be a prime; then  $(Z_p - Z_1)$  is divisible by  $p$ . To prove this note that there are two types of  $p$ -cycles. The first is of the form  $(P, \dots, P)$  where the same point  $P$  is repeated  $p$  times. Evidently such a  $P$  is an absolute point and thus there are  $Z_1$  such  $p$ -cycles. The second type is the set of  $p$ -cycles in which two or more distinct points occur in the cycle; there are  $(Z_p - Z_1)$   $p$ -cycles of this type.

Let  $(P_1, \dots, P_p)$  be a  $p$ -cycle of the second type and suppose that there exists an integer  $r$ ,  $0 < r < p$ , such that  $P_i = P_{i+r}$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $p$ , (subscripts are taken modulo  $p$ ). As the set of integers modulo a prime  $p$  forms a field, there exists an integer  $t$  such that  $rt \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ . But for an arbitrary integer  $k \geq 0$  it is evident by applying  $P_i = P_{i+r}$   $k$  times that  $P_i = P_{i+kr}$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $p$ ; thus in particular  $P_i = P_{i+rt}$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $p$ . As indices are modulo  $p$ , this says that  $P_i = P_{i+1}$  for  $i = 1$  to  $p$ , i.e. that the given  $p$ -cycle is a  $p$ -cycle of the first type. This contradicts the assumption so no integer  $r$  as described exists. Hence  $p$ -cycles of the second type come in classes of  $p$ ,

where a typical class is

$$\left\{ (P_{1+r}, \dots, P_{p+r}) \mid r = 0 \text{ to } p-1 \right\}$$

and each member of the class is distinct by the above argument. Hence  $Z_p - Z_1$  is divisible by  $p$ .

There are now two cases, namely  $n$  even and  $n$  odd.

Case (1). If  $n$  is even, let  $(P_1, P_2)$  be a 2-cycle. Then  $P_1 \in P_2^\varphi$  and  $P_2 \in P_1^\varphi$ ; but as  $\varphi^2 = 1$ ,  $P_1 \in P_2^\varphi \implies P_1^\varphi \in P_2^{\varphi^2} = P_2$ , so  $(P_1, P_2)$  is a 2-cycle if and only if  $P_1 \in P_2^\varphi$ , i.e. if and only if  $P_1$  is any of the  $(n+1)$  points on  $P_2^\varphi$ . Hence as there are  $(n^2+n+1)$  points of  $\pi$ , there are  $(n^2+n+1)(n+1)$  distinct ordered 2-cycles. As  $n$  is even,  $(n^2+n+1)(n+1) = Z_2$  is odd so  $Z_2 \equiv Z_1 \pmod{2}$ . But as 2 is a prime from the above  $Z_2 \equiv Z_1 \pmod{2}$ , so  $Z_1 \equiv 1 \pmod{2}$ . Hence  $Z_1 \neq 0$  so there exist one-cycles and hence absolute points.

Case (2) Suppose that  $n$  is odd. Then for  $m > 3$  consider an ordered set of  $(m-1)$  points, namely  $\{P_1, \dots, P_{m-1}\}$ . If  $P_i \in P_{i+1}^\varphi$  for  $i = 1$  to  $m-2$ , such an ordered set is called an  $(m-1)$ -chain. There are  $(n^2+n+1)(n+1)^{m-2}$  distinct ordered  $(m-1)$ -chains, as  $P_{m-1}$  can be chosen in  $(n^2+n+1)$  ways,  $P_{m-2}$  can be chosen to be any of the  $(n+1)$  points on  $P_{m-1}^\varphi$ ,  $P_{m-3}$  can be any of the  $(n+1)$  points on  $P_{m-2}^\varphi$ , and so on.

A distinction is made between two types of  $(m-1)$ -chains. The first type is that in which  $P_{m-1} = P_1$

and the second type is all other  $(m-1)$ -chains. To each  $(m-1)$ -chain of the first type there corresponds  $(n+1)$  distinct  $m$ -cycles, as the  $m$ -cycle can be completed by choosing  $P_m$  to be any of the  $(n+1)$  points of  $P_1^\varphi$ . Then  $P_m \in P_1^\varphi$ , so  $P_1^{\varphi^2} \in P_m^\varphi$ , i.e.  $P_{m-1} \in P_m^\varphi$  and we indeed have an  $m$ -cycle. To each  $(m-1)$ -chain of the second type there corresponds one  $m$ -cycle, namely that for which  $P_m = P_1^\varphi \cap P_{m-1}^\varphi$ . This exhausts the  $m$ -cycles of  $\varphi$ .

However, the number of  $(m-1)$ -chains of the first type is  $Z_{m-2}$ , for the  $(m-1)$ -chains of the form  $\{P_1, \dots, P_{m-2}, P_1\}$  can be put in one-to-one correspondence with the set of  $(m-2)$ -cycles  $(P_1, \dots, P_{m-2})$  (since  $P_{m-2}^\varphi \in P_1$ ). Hence the number of  $m$ -cycles can be written by noting that there are  $(n+1)$   $m$ -cycles for each  $(m-1)$ -chain of the first type and  $((n^2+n+1)(n+1)^{m-2} - Z_{m-2})$  other  $m$ -cycles, i.e. one for each  $(m-1)$ -chain of the second type. Thus

$$Z_m = (n+1)Z_{m-2} + (n^2+n+1)(n+1)^{m-2} - Z_{m-2}$$

$$\text{i.e. } Z_m = nZ_{m-2} + (n^2+n+1)(n+1)^{m-2} \quad \dots (1)$$

Now for any integer  $k \geq 0$ ,

$$Z_{2k+1} = (n+1)^{2k+1} + n^k(Z_1 - n - 1) \quad \dots (2)$$

To prove this induct on  $k$ . If  $k = 0$  it is evidently true. Suppose that it holds for  $(2k-1)$ .



Then by equation (1),

$$\begin{aligned} Z_{2k+1} &= nZ_{2k-1} + (n^2 + n + 1)(n+1)^{2k-1} \\ &= n \left[ (n+1)^{2k-1} + n^{k-1} (Z_1 - n - 1) \right] + (n^2 + n + 1)(n+1)^{2k-1} \end{aligned}$$

(by the induction hypothesis)

$$\begin{aligned} &= n(n+1)^{2k-1} + n^k (Z_1 - n - 1) + (n^2 + n + 1)(n+1)^{2k-1} \\ &= (n+1)(n+1)^{2k-1} + n^k (Z_1 - n - 1) + n(n+1)(n+1)^{2k-1} \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $Z_{2k+1} = (n+1)^{2k+1} + n^k (Z_1 - n - 1)$

and equation (2) evidently holds in general for all  $k$ .

As  $n$  is odd there exists an odd prime  $p$ , expressible as  $2k+1$  for some  $k$ , such that  $p$  divides  $n$ . In this case equation (2) becomes

$$\begin{aligned} Z_p &= (n+1)^{p+ps} && \text{for some integer } s \\ &= n^p + pr + 1 + p && \text{for integers } r \text{ and } s. \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $Z_p \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ ; but as  $Z_p \equiv Z_1 \pmod{p}$ ,  $Z_1 \equiv 1 \pmod{p}$ , so  $Z_1 \neq 0$  and hence there exist absolute points.

**Definition:** An involutory collineation of a projective plane  $\pi$  is a collineation of order 2.

**Lemma 4.14** Let  $\pi$  be a projective plane of order  $n$  containing a projective subplane  $\mathcal{M}$  of order  $m$ . Let incidence of points and lines in  $\mathcal{M}$  be the same as that in  $\pi$ , and let all points of  $\pi$  be on extended lines of  $\mathcal{M}$ . Then  $n = m^2$ .

**Proof:** Each line of  $\mathcal{M}$  has  $(m+1)$  points and each line of  $\pi$  has  $(n+1)$  points. Hence in extending a line

of  $\mathcal{M}$  to a line of  $\pi$  it is necessary to add  $(n+1)-(m+1) = (n-m)$  points to the line. This must be done for each of the  $(m^2+m+1)$  lines of  $\mathcal{M}$ ; hence  $(m^2+m+1)(n-m)$  new points are added to  $\mathcal{M}$  in this way. As all points of  $\pi$  are on extensions of lines of  $\mathcal{M}$ , these  $(m^2+m+1)(n-m)$  points comprise all the points of  $\pi-\mathcal{M}$ .

These new points are all distinct; for if  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  are distinct lines of  $\mathcal{M}$  and  $P$  is a point of  $\pi-\mathcal{M}$  lying on both the extension of  $m_1$  and the extension of  $m_2$ , then  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  (thought of now as lines of  $\pi$ ) intersect both at a point of  $\mathcal{M}$  and at  $P \in \pi-\mathcal{M}$ , contradicting the axioms of incidence. Thus as  $\pi$  has  $(n^2+n+1)$  points and  $\mathcal{M}$  has  $(m^2+m+1)$  points, it follows that

$$n^2+n+1 = (m^2+m+1) + (m^2+m+1)(n-m)$$

i.e.  $(n^2-m^2) + (n-m) = (m^2+m+1)(n-m)$

$$(n-m)(n+m+1) = (m^2+m+1)(n-m).$$

As  $n > m$ , this implies  $n = m^2$ .

Theorem 4.7 (see Baer (3)) Let  $\sigma$  be an involutory collineation of a finite projective plane of order  $n$ . Then either  $\sigma$  is a central collineation or  $\sigma$  fixes pointwise a subplane of  $\pi$  of order  $\sqrt{n}$ .

Proof: Every point of  $\pi$  lies on a line fixed by  $\sigma$ ; for choose an arbitrary point  $P \in \pi$ . If  $P$  is not

fixed by  $\sigma$  then  $PP^\sigma$  is a well-defined line and  $(PP^\sigma)^\sigma = P^\sigma P^{\sigma^2} = P^\sigma P$ . Hence  $PP^\sigma$  is fixed by  $\sigma$  and  $P \in (PP^\sigma)$ . If  $P$  is fixed by  $\sigma$ , choose any line  $\ell$  such that  $P \notin \ell$  and  $\ell^\sigma \neq \ell$  (such a line exists as  $\sigma \neq 1$ ). Then  $\ell \cap \ell^\sigma \neq P$  and so  $P(\ell \cap \ell^\sigma)$  is a well-defined line through  $P$  fixed by  $\sigma$  (as both  $P$  and  $\ell \cap \ell^\sigma$  are). Thus  $P$  lies on a fixed line.

Let  $K$  be the set of all points and lines of  $\pi$  fixed by  $\sigma$ . Then two lines of  $K$  intersect at a unique point of  $K$  and two points of  $K$  are joined by a unique line of  $K$ . Hence if there are four points of  $K$  of which no three are collinear, the points and lines of  $K$  comprise a projective plane. As every point of  $\pi$  is on a line of  $\pi$  fixed by  $\sigma$ , i.e. on an extension of a line of  $K$ , it follows by lemma 4.13 that  $K$  has order  $\sqrt{n}$ .

If there are not four points of  $K$  of which no three are collinear, choose  $P$  such that  $P^\sigma \neq P$  and let  $\{\ell_i \mid i = 1 \text{ to } n+1\}$  be the  $(n+1)$  lines through  $P$ . Then there exists, for  $i = 1$  to  $n+1$ , a point  $Q_i$  such that  $Q_i \in \ell_i$  and  $Q_i^\sigma = Q_i$  (and thus  $Q_i \neq P$ ). As  $Q_i \in K$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $n+1$ , either all  $(n+1)$  points  $\{Q_i\}$  are collinear or else  $n$  of them (say  $Q_1$  to  $Q_n$ ) are collinear. In the first case  $\sigma$  fixes a line point-wise and hence is a central collineation; in the

second case let  $S$  be the remaining point on the line  $m = Q_1Q_n$ . Then  $m^\sigma = m$  so  $S^\sigma \in m$ ; but  $Q_i^\sigma = Q_i, i = 1$  to  $n$ , so  $S^\sigma = S$  and  $\sigma$  fixes  $m$  point-wise and is thus a central collineation.

## CHAPTER V

### LOCALLY DESARGUESIAN PLANES

Let  $G$  be the collineation group of a finite projective plane  $\pi$ . In this chapter various assumptions are made concerning the action of  $G$  on the points and lines of  $\pi$ . Assumptions are also made concerning the number of elations and homologies in  $G$ . These assumptions are shown to imply in some cases that  $\pi$  is a translation plane or its dual, and in other cases that  $\pi$  is Desarguesian.

Two approaches are used; in the first, due to Wagner (13), the collineation group of the projective plane is regarded as a permutation group on the points and lines of the plane. Certain general assumptions about the orbits of the group are shown to imply that the projective plane in question is a translation plane, and a well-known theorem of Ostrom and Wagner (7), namely that if  $G$  is a collineation group doubly transitive on the points of  $\pi$  then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian, is shown to follow immediately as a corollary. The second approach, due to Wagner (11) and Piper (10), consists of postulating the existence of a certain number of central collineations and from this deducing information about the structure of the plane. The method is essentially an extension of the work of Gleason (4),

and Andre (1).

### Flags in Projective Planes

A flag in a projective plane  $\pi$  is an incident point-line pair. If the point is  $C$  and the line is  $l$ , then the flag is symbolized  $(C, l)$ ;  $C$  is called the centre of the flag and  $l$  the axis of the flag. A collineation  $\varphi$  is said to map the flag  $(C_1, l_1)$  onto the flag  $(C_2, l_2)$  if and only if  $C_1^\varphi = C_2$  and  $l_1^\varphi = l_2$ . This is symbolized by writing  $(C_1, l_1)^\varphi = (C_2, l_2)$ . Thus a collineation group  $G$  of a projective plane  $\pi$  has an action on the set  $F$  of flags of  $\pi$ . Hence the usual concepts of permutation group theory will be applicable to the collineation group  $G$  considered as a permutation group on the set  $F$ .

In the following work a very general condition on the collineation group of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  is shown to be sufficient to ensure that  $\pi$  is a translation plane. A number of preliminary lemmas must first be proved.

### 2-Subplanes of Projective Planes

Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and  $G$  a collineation group of  $\pi$ . A 2-subgroup of  $G$  is defined to be a subgroup of  $G$  of order  $2^\alpha$  for some non-negative integer  $\alpha$ . A non-degenerate projective subplane  $\mu$  of  $\pi$  will be called a 2-subplane of  $\pi$  with respect to  $G$

if there is a 2-subgroup  $H$  of  $G$  fixing every element of  $\mu$  and no other element of  $\pi$ .

More generally, let  $G$  be a collineation group of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  containing a projective subplane  $\mu$ , and suppose that  $G$  permutes the elements of  $\mu$  amongst themselves. Then  $G$  has an action on  $\mu$ , and induces a permutation group  $\bar{G}$  on the elements of  $\mu$ . It is easily seen that  $\bar{G}$  will be a homomorphic image of  $G$ , and that the kernel  $K$  of the homomorphism will be the set of all elements of  $G$  that fix  $\mu$  elementwise.

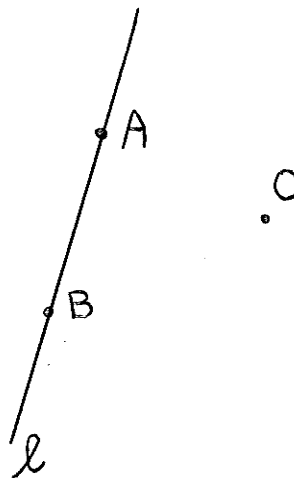
Lemma 5.1 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and let  $\mu$  be a 2-subplane of  $\pi$  with respect to the collineation group  $G$  of  $\pi$ . If  $\mu$  has order  $m$ , then  $n = m^{2^g}$  for some non-negative integer  $g$ .

Proof: Let  $H$  be the 2-subgroup of  $G$  that fixes  $\mu$ , and only  $\mu$ , elementwise. Then  $H = 2^\alpha$  for some integer  $\alpha$ . If  $\alpha = 0$  then  $\pi = \mu$ ,  $g = 0$ , and the theorem holds. If  $\alpha > 0$  then  $|Z(H)| > 1$  (where  $Z(H) = \{h \in H \mid hk = kh \text{ for all } k \in H\}$ ). Consequently there exists an element  $\varphi \in Z(H)$  of order 2. By theorem 4.7,  $\varphi$  is either a central collineation or fixes a subplane  $\pi_1$  of  $\pi$  of order  $\sqrt{n}$ . As  $H$  fixes only elements of  $\mu$ , the first alternative is impossible. Hence  $\varphi$  fixes a subplane  $\pi_1$  elementwise.

As  $\varphi \in Z(H)$ , then  $N_H(\langle \varphi \rangle) = H$  if  $\langle \varphi \rangle$  is the cyclic group generated by  $\varphi$ ; hence by lemma 4.3  $H$  permutes the elements of  $\pi_1$  amongst themselves. Thus

$H$  has an action on  $\pi_1$ . Denote by  $H_1$  the permutation group of  $\pi_1$  induced by  $H$  and let  $K$  be the subgroup of  $H$  fixing  $\pi_1$  elementwise. Then  $H_1$  is isomorphic to  $\frac{H}{K}$ , as noted earlier. It follows that  $H_1$  is a 2-group and a collineation group of  $\pi_1$  that fixes only the elements of  $\mu$ . If  $H_1 = 1$ , then  $\pi_1 = \mu$  and  $n = m^2$ . If  $H_1 \neq 1$ , then the above argument is iterated with  $\pi_1$  playing the role of  $\pi$  and  $H_1$  playing the role of  $H$  (note that all the requisite hypotheses hold). As  $n$  is finite, after iterating the argument a finite number of times (say  $g$ ), the group corresponding to  $H_1$  (call it  $H_g$ ) is the identity. Then the plane corresponding to  $\pi_1$  will be  $\mu$ , and it follows that  $m^{2^g} = n$ .

Definition A projective plane  $\pi$  will be said to have the homology property if  $\pi$  contains a fixed line and a fixed point  $O$ ,  $O \notin \ell$ , such that for any two distinct points  $A$  and  $B$  on  $\ell$ , there exists an involutory homology of  $\pi$  with axis  $OA$  and centre  $B$ .



Lemma 5.2 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  possessing the homology property. Then  $n = p^m$  for some prime  $p$ .



Proof: Let  $\ell$  and  $O$  be the fixed line and point of  $\pi$  respectively, and let  $G$  be the group of collineations generated by all homologies with centre on  $\ell$  and axis through  $O$ . Let  $A$  be an arbitrary point of  $\ell$ , and define  $K_A$  to be the subgroup of  $G$  generated by all the involutory homologies of  $\pi$  with centre on  $\ell$  and axis  $OA$ . Note that  $K_A$  is a proper subgroup of  $G_A$ , as  $G_A$  includes homologies with centre  $A$ .

The group  $G$  fixes  $\ell$  and hence has an action on the points of  $\ell$ ; thus  $K_A$  also has such an action. Also, as  $\pi$  has the homology property, for any point  $B$  of  $\ell - \{A\}$  there is a  $(B, OA)$ -homology of order 2 in  $K_A$ . Thus by theorem 4.4,  $K_A$  is  $(A, OA)$ -transitive, i.e. is transitive on the points of  $\ell - \{A\}$ . Further, all elements of  $K_A$  are, from its definition, central collineations with axis  $OA$ ; hence by lemma 1.3 only the identity of  $K_A$  fixes two points of  $\ell - \{A\}$  and  $K_A$  is thus a Frobenius group on the points of  $\ell - \{A\}$ .

By the above reasoning, for any distinct points  $A_1$  and  $B_1$  on  $\ell$ ,  $G_{A_1}$  is transitive on  $\ell - \{A_1\}$  and  $G_{B_1}$  is transitive on  $\ell - \{B_1\}$ ; hence  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\ell$ . Since, for an arbitrary  $C \in \ell$ ,  $G_C$  is transitive on  $\ell - \{C\}$ , it follows that  $G$  is doubly transitive on the points of  $\ell$ .

Finally,  $K_A$  is normal in  $G_A$ ; for let  $\alpha$  be a generator of  $K_A$  and  $\sigma$  a generator of  $G_A$ . Then  $\alpha$  is a  $(C, OA)$ -

homology where  $C \in \ell - \{A\}$ ; thus by lemma 1.6,  $\sigma^{-1}\alpha\sigma$  is a  $(C^\sigma, (OA)^\sigma)$ -collineation. As  $G$  fixes  $O$  and  $G_A$  fixes  $A$ ,  $(OA)^\sigma = OA$ , so  $\sigma^{-1}\alpha\sigma$  is an involutory homology with axis  $OA$  and hence is in  $K_A$ . It follows that  $K_A$  is normal in  $G_A$ .

As  $K_A$  is generated by involutory homologies it has even order; by the definition of  $G$ , any generator of  $G$  interchanges all but two of the points of  $\ell$  in pairs, so  $(n-1)$  is even, i.e.  $n$  is odd (i.e. any finite plane with the homology property has odd order). Hence all the hypotheses of theorem 4.1 are satisfied, with  $S$  being the set of points on  $\ell$ ,  $G_\alpha$  being  $G_A$ , and  $F_\alpha$  being  $K_A$ . Thus by theorem 4.1  $n$  is a power of some prime. Consequently a finite plane with the homology property has order  $p^m$  for some prime  $p$ .

Lemma 5.3 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing a line  $\ell$  of  $\pi$ . Then the following three conditions are equivalent:

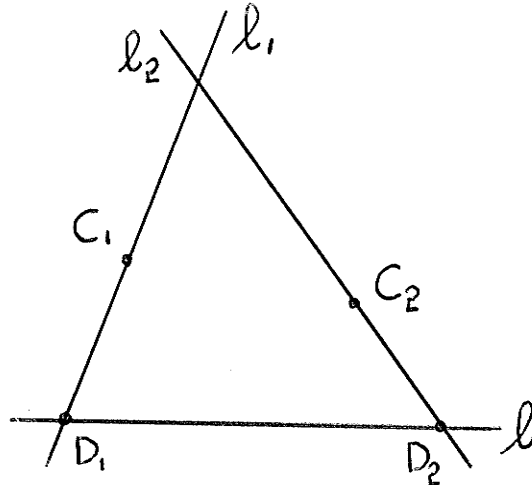
- (1)  $G$  is transitive on the affine lines of  $\pi$  (where  $\ell$  is considered to be the "line at infinity").
- (2)  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\ell$  and on the affine points of  $\pi_\ell$ .
- (3)  $G$  is transitive on affine flags of  $\pi_\ell$  (i.e. on flags  $(C, \gamma)$  with  $C \notin \ell$  and  $\gamma \neq \ell$ ).

Proof:

(1)  $\implies$  (2): Considered as a collineation group on the set  $\mathcal{L}$  of lines of  $\pi$ ,  $G$  partitions  $\mathcal{L}$  into two disjoint orbits. By theorem 4.5,  $G$  will partition the points of  $\pi$  into two disjoint orbits. As  $G$  cannot map points of  $\ell$  onto points not on  $\ell$  (since  $G$  fixes  $\ell$ ), these two orbits must be the points of  $\ell$  and the points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ . Hence (2) follows immediately.

(2)  $\implies$  (3): Let  $(C_1, \ell_1)$  and  $(C_2, \ell_2)$  be arbitrary affine flags of  $\pi$ . Let  $\ell_1 \cap \ell = D_1$  and  $\ell_2 \cap \ell = D_2$ .

By hypothesis the points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$  and the points of  $\ell$  are orbits, under the action of  $G$ , of orders  $(n+1)$  and  $n^2$  respectively. But  $(n+1)$  and  $n^2$  are relatively prime, so by two applications of lemma 4.2 there exist



elements  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  in  $G$  such that  $C_1^{\sigma_1} = C_1$ ,  $D_1^{\sigma_1} = D_2$ , and  $D_2^{\sigma_2} = D_2$ ,  $C_1^{\sigma_2} = C_2$ . Thus  $(C_1, \ell_1)^{\sigma_1 \sigma_2} = (C_2, \ell_2)$ ; as  $(C_1, \ell_1)$  and  $(C_2, \ell_2)$  were arbitrary affine flags of  $\pi$ ,  $G$  is transitive on such flags.

(3)  $\implies$  (1): This is trivially true.

Corollary: Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing  $\ell$  and transitive on the lines of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ . Let  $G_{C, \gamma}$  denote the

stabilizer in  $G$  of the affine flag  $(C, \gamma)$ , let  $G_C$  denote the stabilizer in  $G$  of  $C$ , and let  $G_\gamma$  denote the stabilizer in  $G$  of  $\gamma$ . Then:

$$(1) \quad |G_{C, \gamma}| n^2 (n+1) = |G|$$

$$(2) \quad |G_{C, \gamma}| n^2 = |G_A| \quad \text{where } G_A \text{ is the stabilizer in } G \text{ of an arbitrary point } A \in \mathcal{L}.$$

$$(3) \quad |G_\gamma| = (n+1) |G_{C, \gamma}|$$

$$(4) \quad |G_C| = n |G_{C, \gamma}|$$

$$(5) \quad |G_{A, C}| = |G_{C, \gamma}| \quad \text{where } G_{A, C} \text{ is the subgroup of } G \text{ fixing both } C \text{ and a point } A \in \mathcal{L}.$$

Proof:

(1) There are  $n^2$  affine points in  $\pi_\ell$ , and  $(n+1)$  affine lines through each of these. As each incident point-line pair with elements drawn from these points and lines comprises an affine flag of  $\pi$ , there are  $n^2(n+1)$  affine flags in  $\pi$ . As  $G$  is transitive on affine flags of  $\pi_\ell$  by lemma 5.3,  $|\text{Orb}(C, \gamma)| = n^2(n+1)$ . Thus  $|G_{C, \gamma}| n^2 (n+1) = |G|$  by lemma 4.1.

(2) As by lemma 5.3  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\mathcal{L}$ , it follows from lemma 4.1 that  $|G_A|(n+1) = |G|$ . Combining this with (1) immediately gives  $|G_{C, \gamma}| n^2 = |G_A|$ .

(3) By hypothesis  $G$  is transitive on the  $(n^2+n)$  affine lines of  $\pi$ , so by lemma 4.1  $|G_\gamma|(n^2+n) = |G|$ . Combining this with (1) immediately gives  $|G_\gamma| = n |G_{C, \gamma}|$ .

(4) By lemma 5.3  $G$  is transitive on the  $n^2$  affine

points of  $\pi_\lambda$ . Thus by lemma 4.1,  $|G_C|n^2 = |G|$ . Combining this with (1) immediately gives  $|G_C| = (n+1)|G_{C,\gamma}|$ .

(5) It is evident that  $G_{A,C} = G_{C,AC}$ . As  $G$  is transitive on affine lines it follows from lemma 4.1 that  $|G_{C,AC}| = |G_{C,\gamma}|$ . Consequently  $|G_{A,C}| = |G_{C,\gamma}|$ .

Lemma 5.4 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing a line  $\ell$  of  $\pi$ . Then  $G$  is transitive on points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$  if and only if, for an arbitrary point  $A \in \ell$ ,  $G_A$  is transitive on affine lines through  $A$ .

Proof: Let the action of  $G$  on the points of  $\ell$  split these points into  $s$  orbits.

First assume that  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ . Then there are  $(s+1)$  distinct orbits of points of  $\pi$  under the action of  $G$ . By theorem 4.5 there are  $(s+1)$  orbits of lines of  $\pi$  under the action of  $G$ . As  $\ell$  is a fixed line, there are  $s$  orbits of affine lines of  $\pi$  under  $G$ . Let  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  be distinct orbits of points of  $\ell$  under  $G$ , and let  $\ell_1$  and  $\ell_2$  be affine lines such that  $\ell_1 \cap \ell \in T_1$  and  $\ell_2 \cap \ell \in T_2$ . Then if there exists  $g \in G$  such that  $\ell_1^g = \ell_2$ , it would follow that  $(\ell_1 \cap \ell)^g = \ell_2 \cap \ell$ , contradicting the assumption that  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are distinct orbits. Consequently the set of affine lines of  $\pi$  intersecting  $\ell$  in the points of a given orbit of points of  $\ell$  must comprise an orbit of lines of  $\ell$ . Thus  $G$  is trans-

itive on affine lines through  $A \in \mathcal{L}$ , and consequently  $G_A$  is also transitive on these lines (for arbitrary  $A \in \mathcal{L}$ ).

Conversely, suppose that for arbitrary  $A \in \mathcal{L}$ ,  $G_A$  is transitive on affine lines through  $A$ . Let  $\mathbb{T}$  be an orbit of points of  $\mathcal{L}$  and let  $P_1, P_2 \in \mathbb{T}$ . Then there exists  $g \in G$  such that  $P_1^g = P_2$ . Hence if  $m_1$  is an arbitrary affine line through  $P_1$ ,  $m_1^g$  is an affine line through  $P_2$ . But  $G_{P_i}$  is transitive on affine lines through  $P_i$  ( $i = 1, 2$ ), and  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  were arbitrary in  $\mathbb{T}$ , so it follows that the set of affine lines intersecting  $\mathcal{L}$  in points of the same orbit  $\mathbb{T}$  comprise an orbit of the lines of  $\pi$  under  $G$ . There are  $s$  such orbits, plus a singleton orbit  $\{\mathcal{L}\}$ , and hence a total of  $(s+1)$  orbits of lines under  $G$ . By theorem 4.5, there are  $(s+1)$  orbits of points of  $\pi$  under  $G$ , of which  $s$  are comprised entirely of points of  $\mathcal{L}$ ; it follows that  $G$  is transitive on the affine points of  $\pi$ .

Corollary Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and  $G$  a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing the line  $\mathcal{L}$  and transitive on the lines of  $\pi - \{\mathcal{L}\}$ . If  $A$  and  $B$  are arbitrary points of  $\mathcal{L}$  and  $m_1$  and  $m_2$  are two affine lines through  $B$ , then  $|G_{A,B,m_1}| = |G_{A,B,m_2}|$ .

Proof: By part (2) of the corollary to lemma 5.3,  $G_A$  is transitive on the affine points of  $\pi$ . Thus by lemma 5.4,  $G_{A,B}$  is transitive on affine lines through

B. Thus as  $|\text{Orb } G_{A,B}^{m_1}| = |\text{Orb } G_{A,B}^{m_2}|$ , it follows from lemma 4.1 that  $|G_{A,B,m_1}| = |G_{A,B,m_2}|$ .

Theorem 5.1 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing a line  $\ell$  and transitive on the affine lines of  $\pi$  (where  $\ell$  is regarded as the "line at infinity"). Then if either

(1)  $n$  is even

or (2)  $n$  is a power of an odd prime,

$\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  and  $G$  contains the group of elations with axis  $\ell$ .

Proof: By lemma 5.3,  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\ell$ . Hence if  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are distinct points of  $\ell$ , the elation groups  $G_{C_1,\ell}$  and  $G_{C_2,\ell}$  will be conjugate in  $G$  by lemma 1.6. Hence, by lemma 4.10, in order to show that  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  it suffices to show that  $G$  contains a non-trivial elation with axis  $\ell$ .

Let  $(C,m)$  be an affine flag of  $\pi$ , and suppose  $|G_{C,m}| = k$ . By the notation  $p^u \parallel x$  (for a prime  $p$  and integers  $u$  and  $x$ ) we shall mean that  $p^u$  divides  $x$  but  $p^{u+1}$  does not divide  $x$ . There are two cases:

Case (1):  $n$  is even. Suppose  $2^u \parallel n$  and  $2^v \parallel k$ . Then  $u > 0$ . Let  $M$  be a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $G$ . By the corollary of lemma 5.3,  $|G_{C,m}|(n+1)n^2 = |G|$  and hence  $M$  has order  $2^{2u+v}$ . As  $M$  has a non-trivial centre, choose

$\alpha \in Z(M)$  of order 2. Let  $S$  denote the set of all points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$  fixed by  $\alpha$ , and let  $|S| = s$ . By theorem 4.7, either  $\alpha$  is a central collineation or  $\alpha$  fixes elementwise a projective subplane  $\mu$  of  $\pi$  of order  $\sqrt{n}$ . If  $\alpha$  is a central collineation, since  $n$  is even  $\alpha$  is an elation by theorem 1.2. If  $\alpha$  has axis  $\ell$ , we are finished; if  $\alpha$  has axis  $m$  ( $m \neq \ell$ ), then  $S$  consists of the points of  $m$ , excepting  $m \cap \ell$ , and so  $s = n$ . If  $\alpha$  fixes the points of a subplane  $\mu$ , then  $\alpha$  fixes  $(n + \sqrt{n+1})$  points of  $\pi$ , of which  $\sqrt{n+1}$  are on  $\ell$  restricted to  $\mu$ ; hence  $s = n$  in this case as well.

By lemma 4.3, the normalizer in  $M$  of the group generated by  $\alpha$  permutes the members of  $S$  amongst themselves; as  $\alpha \in Z(M)$ ,  $M$  is this normalizer, so  $M$  has an action on the points of  $S$ . Let  $T$  be an orbit of  $S$  under  $M$  and let  $P$  be an arbitrary element of  $T$ . Suppose  $|T| = t$ . Now  $M_P$  is a subgroup of  $G_P$ , and by the corollary of lemma 5.3,  $|G_P| = (n+1)k$ . Evidently  $2^v \parallel (n+1)k$  (as  $(n+1)$  is odd), i.e.  $2^v \parallel |G_P|$ , and hence  $|M_P|$  divides  $2^v$ . But by lemma 4.1,  $|M_P|t = |M| = 2^{2u+v}$ , so it follows that  $2^{2u}$  divides  $t$ . But as  $T$  was an arbitrary orbit in  $S$ , it follows that

$$2^{2u} \text{ divides } \sum_{\text{all orbits } T} t,$$

i.e.  $2^{2u}$  divides  $n$ . As  $u > 0$ , this contradicts the hypothesis that  $2^u \nmid n$ . Consequently  $s = n$  is impossible,  $\alpha$  is an elation with axis  $\ell$ , and  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .



Case (2)  $n = p^s$  for an odd prime  $p$  and a positive integer  $s$ .

Let  $|G_{C,m}| = k$  as before, let  $p^t \parallel k$ , and let  $A_1$  be an arbitrary point of  $\ell$ . By the corollary to lemma 5.3,  $|G_{A_1}| = n^2 |G_{C,m}|$ . Thus  $p^{t+2s} \parallel |G_{A_1}|$ , so if  $M$  is a Sylow  $p$ -subgroup of  $G_{A_1}$ ,  $|M| = p^{2s+t}$ . Let  $C$  be an arbitrary point of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ . Then by lemma 4.1, the orbit of  $C$  under  $M$  will be

of order  $p^u$  for some integer

$u$ ; hence  $|M_C| p^u = p^{2s+t}$ ,

i.e.  $|M_C| = p^{2s+t-u}$ . But

$M_C$  is a subgroup of  $G_{A_1,C}$ ,

and by the corollary to

lemma 5.3,

$$|G_{A_1,C}| = |G_{C,m}| = k.$$

Thus  $p^{2s+t-u}$  divides  $k$ . As  $p^t \parallel k$ , it follows that

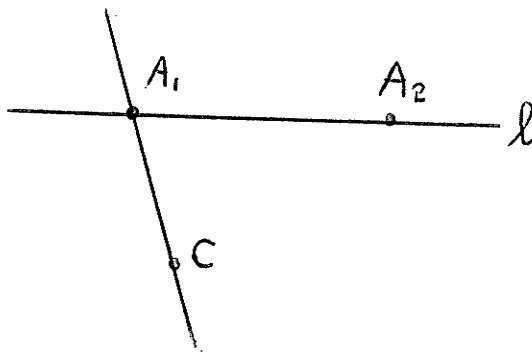
$p^{2s+t-u} \leq p^t$ , and as  $u \leq 2s$  from the definition of  $s$  and

$u$ , it follows that  $u = 2s$ . Hence  $|\text{Orb } C| = p^u = p^{2s} = n^2$

and  $M$  is transitive on the affine points of  $\pi$ .

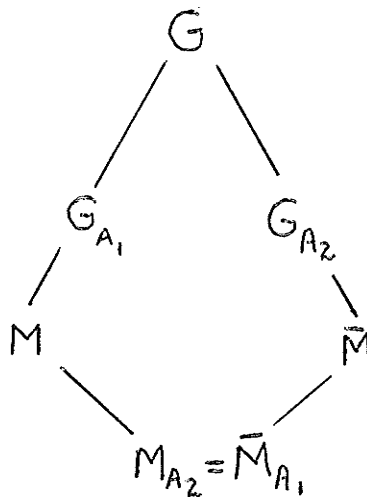
Now  $M$  has an action on the points of  $\ell - \{A_1\}$ , and hence partitions these points into orbits. Let  $A_2 \in \ell$  and let  $A_2$  be a member of an orbit of minimal length under  $M$ . Thus  $B \in \ell - \{A_1\} \implies |M_{A_2}| \geq |M_B|$ . As  $M$  is transitive on affine points of  $\pi$ , by lemma 5.4  $M_{A_2}$  is transitive on affine lines through  $A_2$ .

Evidently  $M_{A_2}$  is a  $p$ -subgroup of  $G_{A_2}$ ; consequently



there is a Sylow  $p$ -subgroup  $\bar{M}$  of  $G_{A_2}$  such that  $M_{A_2} \leq \bar{M}$ . As  $M_{A_2}$  fixes  $A_1$ , it further follows that  $M_{A_2} \leq (\bar{M})_{A_1}$ .

By the corollary of lemma 5.3, it follows that  $|G| = (n+1)|G_{A_1}|$ , so  $M$  and  $\bar{M}$  are Sylow  $p$ -subgroups of  $G$ .



(See the Hasse diagram giving the group relationships.)

Hence there exists  $g \in G$  such that  $g^{-1}\bar{M} = M$ . Let  $A_1^g = B$ . Then  $B \in \mathcal{L}$ . If  $A_1 = B$ , then  $g \in G_{A_1}$ ,  $\bar{M} \in \text{Syl}_p(G_{A_1})$ , and  $(\bar{M})_{A_1} = \bar{M}$ . Similarly  $M_{A_2} = M$ , and  $M_{A_2} = (\bar{M})_{A_1} = M = \bar{M}$ . If  $A_1 \neq B$ , it is seen that  $g^{-1}(\bar{M})_{A_1}g \leq g^{-1}Mg = M$ . But evidently  $g^{-1}(\bar{M})_{A_1}g \leq M_B$ , so by the maximality of  $M_{A_2}$ ,  $|M_{A_2}| \geq |g^{-1}(\bar{M})_{A_1}g| = |(\bar{M})_{A_1}|$ . But  $|M_{A_2}| \leq |(\bar{M})_{A_1}|$ , and so  $M_{A_2} = (\bar{M})_{A_1}$ .

Just as  $M_{A_2}$  is transitive on affine lines through  $A_2$ , so also is  $(\bar{M})_{A_1}$  transitive on affine lines through  $A_1$ . Hence  $M_{A_2}$  is transitive on affine lines through  $A_1$ .

Let  $\{A_i | i = 2, \dots, q\}$  be the set of points of  $\mathcal{L} - \{A_1\}$  fixed by  $M_{A_2}$ . Thus  $M_{A_2} \leq M_{A_i}$ ,  $i = 2, \dots, q$ ; thus by the maximality of  $M_{A_2}$ ,  $M_{A_2} = M_{A_i}$ ,  $i = 2$  to  $q$ , so as  $M_{A_i}$  is transitive on affine lines through  $A_i$ ,  $i = 2$  to  $q$ , and as  $M_{A_2}$  has been shown to be transitive on affine lines through  $A_1$ , it follows that  $M_{A_2}$  is

transitive on the affine lines through  $A_i$ ,  $i = 1$  to  $q$ .

As  $p$ -groups have non-trivial centres, we can find  $\alpha \in Z(M_{A_2})$  such that  $\alpha$  is of order  $p$ . Then  $\alpha$  fixes at least two points of  $\pi$ , namely  $A_1$  and  $A_2$ ; hence by theorem 4.5,  $\alpha$  fixes at least two lines of  $\pi$ , one of which is  $\ell$ . Let one of the other lines be denoted by  $m$ . Then either  $\ell \cap m = A_j$  for some  $j \in \{1, \dots, q\}$ , or  $\ell \cap m \neq A_j$  for any  $j \in \{1, \dots, q\}$ .

In the first case, let  $r$  be an arbitrary affine line through  $A_j$ . As  $M_{A_2}$  is transitive on lines through  $A_j$ , there exists  $\varphi \in M_{A_2}$  such that  $m^\varphi = r$ . Thus  $m^{\varphi\alpha} = r^\alpha$ , and as  $\alpha \in Z(M_{A_2})$ ,  $r^\alpha = m^{\varphi\alpha} = m^\varphi$ . Thus  $r^\alpha = m^{\varphi\alpha} = r^{\alpha^2}$ , i.e.  $r = r^\alpha$ ; i.e.  $\alpha$  fixes every line through  $A_j$ . Thus  $\alpha$  is a central collineation with centre  $A_j$ . To show that its axis is  $\ell$ , it suffices to show that no point of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$  is fixed by  $\alpha$ . Suppose that  $C \in \pi - \{\ell\}$  and suppose that  $C^\alpha = C$ . Then as  $\alpha$  fixes  $A_s$ ,  $s \in \{1, \dots, q\}$  and  $s \neq j$ ,  $(CA_s)^\alpha = CA_s$  and thus by the dual of lemma 1.3,  $\alpha = 1$ , contrary to hypothesis (note that as  $q \geq 2$ , an  $A_s$  can always be found). Hence  $\alpha$  is a non-trivial elation with axis  $\ell$  and we are finished.

The second case cannot arise; for suppose  $\ell \cap m = D$  where  $D \neq A_j$ ,  $j = 1$  to  $q$ . Consider the orbit of  $m$  under  $M_{A_2}$ . As  $D$  is not fixed by  $M_{A_2}$ , there is a line  $r \in (\text{Orb}_{M_{A_2}} m)$  such that  $r \cap m = E$  and  $E \notin \ell$ . By the argument used in the previous paragraph, as  $\alpha$  fixes  $m$  it also fixes  $r$ ; hence  $E^\alpha = (m \cap r)^\alpha = E$ .

Hence in all possible cases  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

Lemma 5.5 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of odd order  $n$ , and  $G$  a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing  $\ell$ , the "line at infinity", and transitive on the lines of  $\pi_\ell$ . Let  $\mu$  be a minimal 2-subplane of  $\pi$  with respect to  $G$ ; i.e. let it contain no non-degenerate 2-subplane of  $\pi$  with respect to  $G$ . Let  $H$  be the subgroup of  $G$  consisting of all elements of  $G$  that map  $\mu$  onto itself. Then, as  $H$  has an action on  $\mu$ :

- (1) For every affine flag of  $\mu$  there exists an involutory homology in  $H$  fixing this flag.
- (2) If  $A$  and  $B$  are distinct points of  $\ell$  restricted to  $\mu$ , and if  $\bar{\ell}$  is an affine line of  $\mu$  through  $B$  such that there exists an involutory homology in  $H$  fixing  $A, B$ , and  $\bar{\ell}$ , then if  $m$  is any other affine line of  $\mu$  through  $B$  there exists an involutory homology in  $H$  fixing  $A, B$ , and  $m$ .

Proof of (1) Let  $K$  be a maximal (in that no 2-subgroup of  $G$  containing  $K$  has the property) 2-subgroup of  $G$  fixing  $\mu$ , and only  $\mu$ , elementwise. Let  $(C, \bar{\ell})$  be an arbitrary affine flag of  $\mu$  (and hence of  $\pi$ ). Let  $|G_{C, \bar{\ell}}| = k$ . From the corollary of lemma 5.3,  $|G| = k(n+1)n^2$ . If  $u, v$ , and  $w$  are defined by  $2^u \parallel n+1$ ,  $2^v \parallel k$ , and  $|K| = 2^w$ , then as  $n$  is odd,  $u > 0$  and  $2^{u+v} \parallel |G|$ . Evidently  $K$  is a subgroup of  $G_{(C, \bar{\ell})}$ , and so  $w \leq v$ . Thus as Sylow 2-subgroups of  $G$  have order  $2^{u+v}$ ,  $K$  is not a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $G$ . Hence there exists, by the theory

of groups of prime power order, a 2-subgroup  $\bar{K}$  of  $G$  of order  $2^{w+1}$  containing  $K$ . Then  $K$  is normal in  $\bar{K}$ . As  $K$  fixes  $\mu$  and only  $\mu$  elementwise, by lemma 4.3  $\bar{K}$  permutes the elements of  $\mu$  amongst themselves. Thus  $\bar{K}$  has an action on  $\mu$ , and induces a collineation group of  $\mu$ . By the maximality of  $K$ ,  $\bar{K}$  is not the identity on  $\mu$ . Now  $\bar{K}$  is generated by  $K$  and  $\bar{k}$ , where  $\bar{k}\in\bar{K}-K$  and  $\bar{k}$ , considered as a collineation of  $\mu$ , has order 2. The action of  $\bar{K}$  restricted to  $\mu$  is evidently isomorphic to  $\frac{\bar{K}}{K}$ , which is isomorphic to the group  $\{1, \bar{k}\}$ . Thus  $\bar{K}$  acts on  $\mu$  as a collineation group of order 2 generated by  $\bar{k}$ . Thus by theorem 4.7,  $\bar{k}$  is either a central collineation of  $\mu$  or else fixes a non-degenerate subplane of  $\mu$ . The latter alternative is impossible by the minimality of  $\mu$ ; hence as  $\pi$  has odd order, by lemma 5.1 so has  $\mu$ , and hence by theorem 1.2  $\bar{k}$  acts as an involutory homology of  $\mu$ . As  $\bar{k}\in G$ , it fixes  $\ell \cap \mu$  (where  $\ell \cap \mu = \{P \mid P \in \ell, P \in \mu\}$ ); hence either  $\ell$  is the axis of  $\bar{k}$  or the centre of  $\bar{k}$  is on  $\ell$ . In either case it is evident that  $\bar{k}$  fixes some affine flag, say  $(D, m)$ , of  $\mu$ . Thus  $\bar{K} \leq G_{(D, m)}$  and as  $|\bar{K}| = 2^{w+1}$ ,  $(w+1)$  divides  $|G_{(D, m)}| = k$ . Hence as  $2^v \parallel k$ ,  $(w+1) \leq v$ , i.e.  $w < v$ . Thus  $K$  is not a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $G_{(C, \bar{\ell})}$ . It follows that  $G_{(C, \bar{\ell})}$  contains a 2-subgroup  $L$  of order  $2^{w+1}$  containing  $K$  as a normal subgroup of index 2. By lemma 4.3,  $L$  permutes the elements of  $\mu$  amongst themselves and so  $L$  is a subgroup of  $H$ . By the argument used

for  $\bar{K}$ , it follows that  $L$  contains an element which acts on  $\mu$  as an involutory homology and fixes  $(C, \bar{\ell})$ . This element will be in  $H$ , and as  $(C, \bar{\ell})$  was arbitrary, assertion (1) holds.

Proof of (2) The group  $K$  as defined above is not a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $H_{A,B,\bar{\ell}}$ ; for let  $\bar{H}$  be the subgroup of  $H$  that fixes  $\mu$  elementwise. Then  $\bar{H}$  is a normal subgroup of  $H$ , as is easily verified, and  $K$  is a subgroup of  $\bar{H}$ . By hypothesis there is an element of  $H_{A,B,\bar{\ell}}$  that, considered as a collineation of  $\mu$ , is of order 2; consequently the factor group  $\frac{H_{A,B,\bar{\ell}}}{\bar{H}}$  has even order, and so  $K$  cannot be a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $H_{A,B,\bar{\ell}}$ . Consequently  $K$  is not a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $G_{A,B,\bar{\ell}}$ . By the corollary of lemma 5.4,  $|G_{A,B,\bar{\ell}}| = |G_{A,B,m}|$ . Thus by definition of  $K$ ,  $K$  is a 2-subgroup of  $G_{A,B,m}$  but not a Sylow 2-subgroup of  $G_{A,B,m}$ . Then by the argument used in case (1), there exists a 2-subgroup  $\bar{K}$  of  $G_{A,B,m}$  inducing a permutation on  $\mu$ , possessing  $K$  as a normal subgroup of index 2, and possessing an involutory homology fixing  $A, B$ , and  $m$ . As  $\bar{K}$  is a subgroup of  $H$ ,  $H$  possesses such an involutory homology and assertion (2) holds.

Lemma 5.6 Let  $\mu$  be a finite projective plane and  $H$  a collineation group of  $\mu$  fixing a line  $\ell$  of  $\mu$  and possessing the properties of  $H$  in lemma 5.5, i.e.

(1) For every affine flag of  $\mu$  there exists an involutory homology in  $H$  fixing this flag.

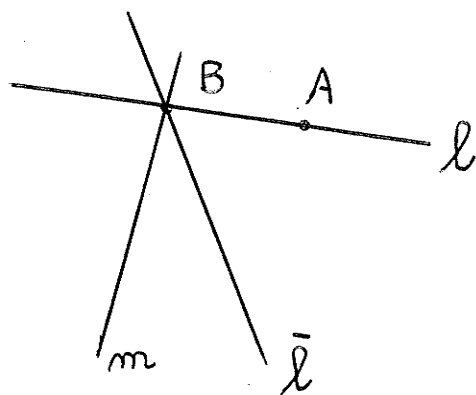
(2) If  $A$  and  $B$  are distinct points of  $\ell$  and  $\bar{\ell}$  is an affine line of  $\mu$  through  $B$  such that  $H$  contains an involutory homology of  $H$  fixing  $A, B$ , and  $\bar{\ell}$ , then for any other affine line  $m$  of  $\mu$  through  $B$  there exists an involutory homology in  $H$  fixing  $A, B$ , and  $m$ . Then one of the following must hold:

- (i)  $\mu$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ ,
- (ii)  $\mu$  is the dual of a translation plane,
- (iii)  $\mu$  possesses the homology property.

Proof: There are several cases.

Case I:  $H$  contains no involutory homology with centre not on  $\ell$ .

Then by condition (1)  $H$  contains an involutory



homology  $\alpha$ . Let  $\alpha$  have centre  $A$  and axis  $\bar{\ell}$ ; then  $A \in \ell$ , and let  $\ell \cap \bar{\ell} = B \neq A$ . Evidently,  $A, B$ , and  $\bar{\ell}$  satisfy the prerequisites of condition (2), so for any affine line  $m$  through  $B$ , there exists

an involutory homology  $\beta \in H$  such that  $\beta$  fixes  $A, B$ , and  $m$ . Evidently  $\beta$  has either  $A$  or  $B$  as its centre; if the

centre is B, then the axis  $\bar{m}$  is an affine line through A and by lemma 1.10,  $\alpha\beta$  is an involutory homology with centre  $\bar{m} \cap \bar{\ell}$ , which is not on  $\ell$ ; this contradicts the assumption. Hence  $\beta$  has centre A and, as it fixes  $m$ , axis  $m$ . Thus for every affine line  $m$  through B there is an involutory homology  $\beta$  with centre A and axis  $m$ . By the dual of theorem 4.4, part (1),  $\mu$  is  $(A, \ell)$ -transitive. There are now two possibilities.

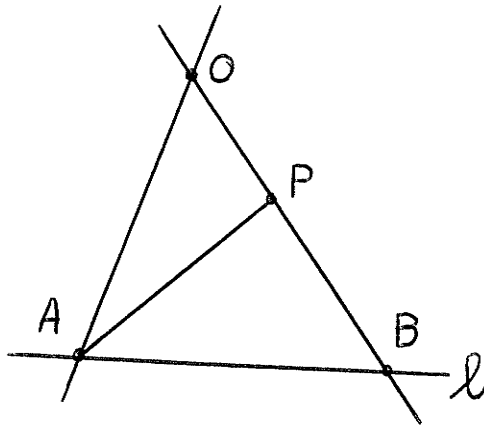
If H does not fix A, then as H fixes  $\ell$ , there exists  $\varphi \in H$  such that  $A^\varphi = \bar{A} \neq A$ ,  $\bar{A} \in \ell$ . Then by lemma 1.6  $\mu$  is both  $(A, \ell)$ - and  $(\bar{A}, \bar{\ell})$ -transitive, and by lemma 1.7  $\mu$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

If H fixes A, let  $(P, q)$  be an arbitrary affine flag of  $\mu$  such that  $C = \ell \cap q \neq A$ . By condition (1) there exists an involutory homology  $\gamma \in H$  such that  $\gamma$  fixes  $(P, q)$ . Now  $\gamma$  also fixes A by hypothesis. If, for every affine line  $q$  of  $m$  not through A the corresponding involutory homology  $\gamma$  has centre A, by the dual of part (2) of theorem 4.4,  $\mu$  is the dual of a translation plane with special point A. If there exists an affine line  $q$ ,  $A \notin q$ , such that A is not the centre of the corresponding involutory homology  $\gamma$ , then  $\gamma$  has centre C and plays the same role as  $\beta$  did earlier in the argument; and by using the argument employed there, it is found that  $\mu$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .



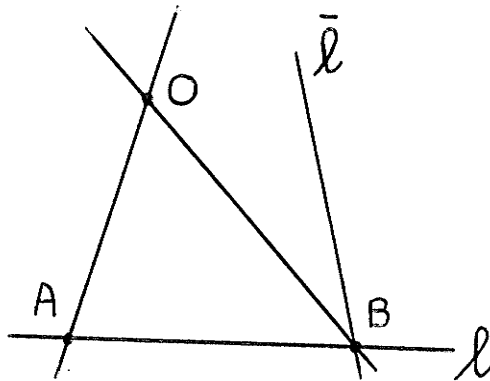
Case II: Only one affine point of  $\mu$  is the centre of an involutory homology in  $H$ .

Let this point be  $O$ , and let  $\alpha$  be the involutory homology with centre  $O$ . Then  $H$  fixes  $O$ , for if there exists  $h \in H$  such that  $O^h = \bar{O} \neq O$ , then  $\bar{O}$  is an affine point (as  $H$  fixes  $\ell$ ) and by lemma 1.6 is the centre of the involutory homology  $h^{-1}\alpha h$ , contrary to hypothesis. Let  $A$  and  $B$  be arbitrary distinct points of  $\ell$ . Choose  $P \in OB$ ,  $P \neq B$ ,  $P \neq O$ . Then by condition (1), there is an involutory homology  $\gamma \in H$  such that  $\gamma$  fixes the affine flag  $(P, AP)$ . Thus  $\gamma$  fixes  $P$ ,  $O$ , and thus also  $OP \cap \ell = B$  and  $AP \cap \ell = A$ . Thus  $\gamma$  has centre  $A$  and axis  $OB$ . As  $A$  and  $B$  were arbitrary on  $\ell$ ,  $\mu$  has the homology property (with respect to the point  $O$  and the line  $\ell$ ).



Case III: There exist at least two affine points of  $\mu$  that are centres of involutory homologies in  $H$ .

Let  $O$  be one of these points, and let  $\delta$  be an involutory homology with centre  $O$ . Let  $A$  and  $B$  be arbitrary points on  $\ell$ , and let  $\bar{\ell}$  be an arbitrary affine line through  $B$ . As  $\delta$  fixes  $\ell$ ,  $OA$ , and  $OB$  it fixes  $A$  and  $B$ . Thus by condition (2)



there is an involutory homology in  $H$  that fixes  $A, B$ , and  $\bar{\ell}$ .

As  $H$  fixes  $\ell$ , any homology in  $H$  with an affine centre must have axis  $\ell$ ; consequently as there are at least two distinct affine centres of homologies in  $H$  with axis  $\ell$ , by theorem 4.3 there is a non-trivial elation with axis  $\ell$  in  $H$ . There are now two subcases.

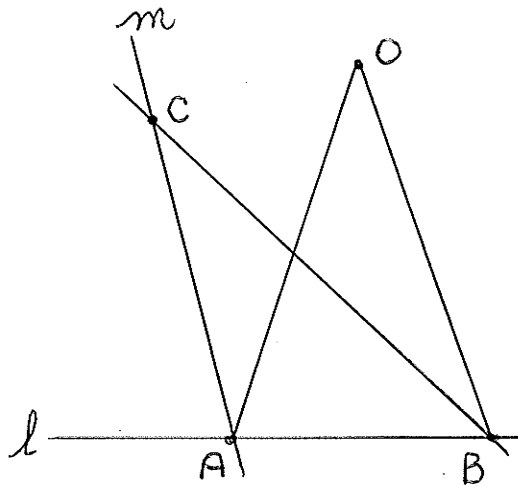
Subcase III(a): Some affine line  $m$  does not contain an affine point that is the centre of an involutory homology in  $H$ .

Let  $\ell \cap m = A$  and let  $B \in \ell - \{A\}$ . As seen above, there is an involutory homology  $\alpha \in H$  that fixes  $A, B$ , and  $m$ . Either  $\alpha$  has centre  $A$  and axis through  $B$ , or centre  $B$  and axis  $m$ . In either case  $\alpha$  has an action on the points of  $\ell - \{A\}$ , and fixes only  $B$ . There is such an  $\alpha$  of order 2 for each  $B \in \ell - \{A\}$ , so as 2 is a prime, by lemma 4.4 the group generated by all such involutory homologies  $\alpha$  is transitive on  $\ell - \{A\}$ . But this group is evidently a subgroup of  $H_{A,m}$ , so  $H_{A,m}$  is transitive on the points of  $\ell - \{A\}$ .

If  $H$  does not fix  $A$ , then  $H$  is transitive on the points of  $\ell$ , and as it has been seen that  $H$  contains a non-trivial elation with axis  $\ell$ , it follows from lemma 4.10 that  $\mu$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

If  $H$  fixes  $A$ , let  $C$  be any affine point of  $m$  and  $B$  any point of  $\ell - \{A\}$ . By condition (1) there exists an involutory homology  $\gamma \in H$  fixing the flag  $(C, CB)$ . Also,

$\gamma$  fixes  $A$  and  $CB \cap \ell = B$ ,  
 so by applying the argument  
 above with  $\gamma$  playing the  
 role of  $\alpha$  (and noting that  
 $B$  is arbitrary in  $\ell - \{A\}$ ),  
 it follows that  $H_{A,C}$  is  
 transitive on the points of  
 $\ell - \{A\}$ .



For a given  $B$  and  $\gamma$ , as  $C$  is by hypothesis not  
 the centre of  $\gamma$ , one of  $A$  and  $B$  is. If  $A$  is the centre,  
 then  $\gamma$  is an  $(A, CB)$ -homology. If  $\varphi \in H_{A,C}$ , then by  
 lemma 1.6  $\varphi^{-1}\gamma\varphi$  is an  $(A^\varphi, C^\varphi B^\varphi)$ -homology, i.e. an  $(A, CB^\varphi)$ -  
 homology. As  $H_{A,C}$  is transitive on  $\ell - \{A\}$  it follows  
 that for every line  $q$  through  $C$  (excepting  $CA$ ) there is  
 a non-trivial  $(C, q)$ -homology. Hence by the dual of  
 part (1) of theorem 4.4,  $\mu$  is  $(A, AC)$ -transitive.

If  $\gamma$  has centre  $B$  (and thus axis  $AC$ ), then  $\gamma$  is a  
 $(B, m)$ -homology. Thus as  $H_{A,C}$  is transitive on points  
 of  $\ell - \{A\}$  and as  $H_{A,C}$  fixes  $m$ , by lemma 1.6 there is a  
 non-trivial  $(P, m)$ -homology for every point  $P \in \ell - \{A\}$ .  
 Hence by theorem 4.4, part (1),  $\mu$  is  $(A, m)$ -transitive.

Thus in either case  $\mu$  is  $(A, m)$ -transitive; hence  
 as the involutory homology  $\delta$  with centre  $O \notin \ell$  fixes  $A$ ,  
 by lemma 1.6  $\mu$  is  $(A, m^\delta)$ -transitive, and  $m^\delta \neq m$ ; hence  
 by the dual of lemma 1.7,  $\mu$  is the dual of a translation  
 plane with respect to the point  $A$ .

Subcase III(b): Every affine line of  $\mu$  has on it an affine point of  $\mu$  that is the centre of an involutory homology in  $H$ .

Then let  $A$  be an arbitrary point of  $\ell$  and let  $m$  be an arbitrary affine line through  $A$ . Then there is an involutory homology  $\alpha \in H$  whose centre is an affine point of  $m$ , and whose axis is  $\ell$ . If  $S_A$  denotes the set of affine lines through  $A$ , then as  $\alpha$  fixes  $A$  it permutes the elements of  $S_A$  amongst themselves and fixes only  $m$ . As there is such an  $\alpha$  of order 2 for each  $m \in S_A$ , it follows by lemma 4.3 that the group generated by all such  $\alpha$ , and hence  $H_A$ , is transitive on  $S_A$ . As  $A$  was arbitrary on  $\ell$ , it follows by lemma 5.4 that  $H$  is transitive on the points of  $\mu - \{\ell\}$ . Hence by lemma 1.6, there is a non-trivial  $(G, \ell)$ -homology for every  $C \in \mu - \{\ell\}$ , and thus by theorem 4.4, part (3),  $\mu$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ .

This completes the proof of lemma 5.6.

Theorem 5.2 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  fixing a line  $\ell$  (the "line at infinity") and transitive on affine lines of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  and  $G$  contains the group of elations with axis  $\ell$ .

Proof: If  $n$  is even the result is immediate by theorem 5.1. If  $n$  is odd, let  $\mu$  be a minimal 2-subplane

of  $\pi$ . Then by lemma 5.1  $\mu$  has odd order, and by lemmas 5.5 and 5.6  $\mu$  is either a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$ , the dual of a translation plane, or possesses the homology property. If  $\mu$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  then by theorem 1.1 the group of all elations with axis  $\ell$  has prime power order. Hence if  $C \in \ell$ , the group  $G_{C,\ell}$  of elations with centre  $C$  and axis  $\ell$  has prime power order, and by lemma 1.4  $|G_{C,\ell}| = n$ . Hence  $n$  has prime power order. If  $\mu$  is the dual of a translation plane, the dual argument gives the same result. If  $\mu$  possesses the homology property,  $n$  is of prime power order by lemma 5.2. Hence if  $n$  is odd,  $\mu$  has prime power order. By lemma 5.1 this implies that  $\pi$  has prime power order; hence by theorem 5.1  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  and  $G$  contains the group of all elations of  $\pi$  with axis  $\ell$ .

Corollary Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane with a collineation group  $G$  doubly transitive on the lines of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

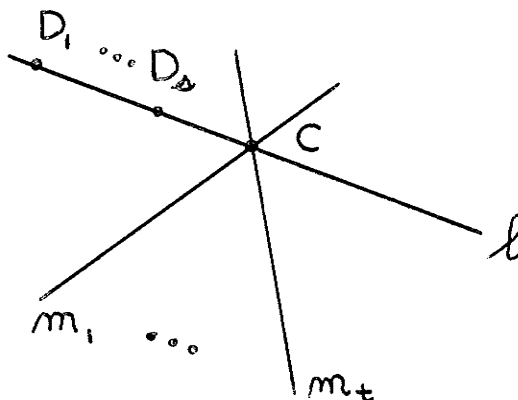
Proof: As  $G$  is doubly transitive on the lines of  $\pi$ ,  $G_\ell$  is transitive on the affine lines of the affine plane  $\pi_\ell$  for any line  $\ell \in \pi$ . Thus  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to every line of  $\pi$ , and  $G$  contains

all elations of  $\pi$ . Hence by the conclusions of Chapter III,  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

In the remaining theorems of this chapter we study the extent to which the number of central collineations in the collineation group of the projective plane determines the structure of the plane.

Theorem 5.3 (Wagner (11)). Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane possessing a point  $C$  and line  $\ell$ ,  $C \in \ell$ , such that  $C$  is the centre of an elation and  $\ell$  is the axis of an elation. Then there exists a non-trivial  $(C, \ell)$ -elation in  $\pi$ .

Proof: Suppose on the contrary that there is no non-trivial  $(C, \ell)$ -elation. Let  $\{D_i \mid i = 1 \text{ to } s\}$  be the set of all centres of non-trivial elations with axis  $\ell$  and  $\{m_j \mid j = 1 \text{ to } t\}$  be the set of all axes of elations with centre  $C$ . Then  $D_i \neq C$ ,  $i = 1 \text{ to } s$ , and  $m_j \neq \ell$ ,  $j = 1 \text{ to } t$ . By the hypotheses of the theorem  $s \geq 1$  and  $t \geq 1$ .



Let  $\alpha_i$  be a  $(D_i, \ell)$ -elation and  $\beta_1$  a  $(C, m_1)$ -elation. Then by lemma 1.6  $\alpha_i^{-1}\beta_1\alpha_i$  is a  $(C, m_1^{\alpha_i})$ -elation. Thus, as  $\alpha_i$  does not fix  $m_1$  as  $m_1 \cap \ell \neq D_i$ ,  $m_1^{\alpha_i} = m_u$  for some

integer  $u$  such that  $2 \leq u \leq t$ . Further, if  $i \neq j$  then  $m_1^{\alpha_i} \neq m_1^{\alpha_j}$ ; for otherwise  $m_1^{\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}} = m_1$ , and by lemma 1.5  $\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}$  is a non-trivial elation with axis  $\ell$ ; as  $\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}$  fixes  $m_1$ , its centre is  $C$ , in contradiction to the assumption that no  $(C, \ell)$ -elation exists. Thus  $i \neq j \Rightarrow m_1^{\alpha_i} \neq m_1^{\alpha_j}$ . Thus to each of the  $s$  points  $\{D_i | i = 1 \text{ to } s\}$  corresponds a distinct line of the set  $\{m_j | j = 2 \text{ to } t\}$ . Hence  $s < t$ . However, the dual argument gives that  $t < s$ . This contradiction shows that our assumption is false and that a non-trivial  $(C, \ell)$ -elation exists.

Corollary: If  $\pi$  is a finite projective plane and  $G$  is a collineation group of  $\pi$  such that every point is the centre of a non-trivial elation in  $G$  and every line is the axis of a non-trivial elation in  $G$ , then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group.

Proof: By theorem 5.3, for every point  $C$  and line  $\ell$  such that  $C \in \ell$  there is a non-trivial  $(C, \ell)$ -elation. Hence by lemma 4.11 the plane is Desarguesian.

The analogous case for homologies is now treated.

Theorem 5.4 (Wagner (11)). Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  with the following properties:

- (1) Every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of some non-trivial homology in  $G$ .

(2) Every line of  $\pi$  is the axis of some non-trivial homology in  $G$ .

Then one of the following happens:

(a)  $G$  fixes a line  $\ell$  of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  and  $G$  contains the group of elations with axis  $\ell$ .

(b)  $G$  fixes a point  $P$  of  $\pi$ . The conclusions are the duals of those of case (a).

(c)  $G$  fixes no element of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the group generated by the elations of  $\pi$  as a subgroup.

Proof: Case (a): Let every element of  $G$  fix the line  $\ell$ . Then if  $C$  is any point not on  $\ell$ , there is a homology  $\varphi$  in  $G$  with centre  $C$ , and  $\varphi$  fixes  $\ell$ ; hence  $\varphi$  has axis  $\ell$ . Thus  $C \notin \ell$  implies that  $G$  contains a  $(C, \ell)$ -homology. By theorem 4.4,  $\pi$  is a translation plane with respect to  $\ell$  and  $G$  contains the group of elations with axis  $\ell$  as a subgroup. As  $G$  also contains homologies, this group is a proper subgroup.

By dualizing the argument of case (a), the results of case (b) are obtained.

Case (c): In order to obtain the results of case (c) three assertions are established:

(1) Either some centre of  $\pi$  has more than one axis or some axis of  $\pi$  has more than one centre.



(2) If some line of  $\pi$  possesses more than one centre but no line possesses three non-collinear centres, then some point of  $\pi$  has three non-concurrent axes.

(3) If some line of  $\pi$  possesses three non-collinear centres then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

To prove (1), suppose on the contrary that it is false. Hence by the hypotheses every point of  $\pi$  has one and only one axis (of a homology with that point as centre), and every line of  $\pi$  has one and only one centre. Define a mapping  $\varphi$  of points of  $\pi$  onto lines of  $\pi$  and of lines of  $\pi$  onto points of  $\pi$  as follows: if  $P$  is a point,  $P^\varphi$  is the axis of the homology with centre  $P$ ; if  $l$  is a line,  $l^\varphi$  is the centre of the homology with axis  $l$ . By the uniqueness of centres and axes hypothesized above,  $\varphi$  is well-defined, and as it evidently is its own inverse, it is onto. As centres (axes) of lines (points) are unique, from the definition of  $\varphi$  it is evident that  $\varphi^2 = 1$ .

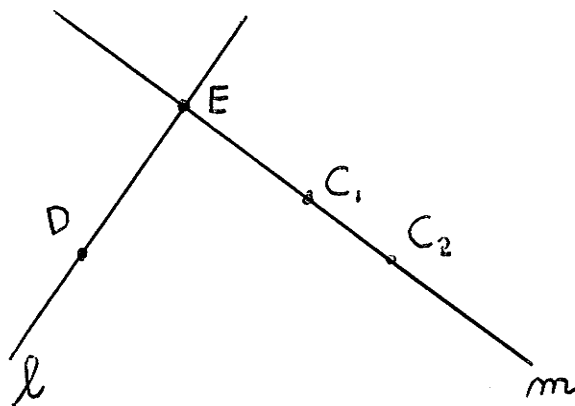
Then  $\varphi$  is a correlation (and in fact a polarity); to prove this it remains to show that  $C \in l \iff l^\varphi \in C^\varphi$  for an arbitrary point  $C$  and line  $l$ . As  $\varphi^2 = 1$ , it suffices to show that  $C \in l \implies l^\varphi \in C^\varphi$ ; for then

$$l^\varphi \in C^\varphi \implies C^{\varphi^2} \in l^{\varphi^2} \implies C \in l.$$

Let  $C \in l$  and let  $\alpha$  be a  $(C, C^\varphi)$ -homology. By lemma 1.6, since there exists an  $(l^\varphi, l)$ -homology, there also exists a  $(l^{\varphi\alpha}, l^\alpha)$ -homology; thus by the hypotheses, any homology

with axis  $l^\alpha$  has centre  $l^{\varphi\alpha}$ . But  $\alpha$  is a homology with centre  $C$ , and  $C \in l$ ; hence  $l^\alpha = l$ , and hence  $l^{\varphi\alpha}$  is the centre of any homology with axis  $l$ . But there exists an  $(l^\varphi, l)$ -homology; consequently  $l^{\varphi\alpha} = l^\varphi$  and thus  $\alpha$  fixes  $l^\varphi$ . Thus by the definition of  $\alpha$ , either  $l^\varphi = C$  or  $l^\varphi \in C^\varphi$ . However, the first alternative is impossible since  $l^\varphi$  is the centre of a homology with axis  $l$ , and hence  $l^\varphi \notin l$ , whereas  $C \in l$ . Hence  $l^\varphi \in C^\varphi$ , i.e.  $C \in l \iff l^\varphi \in C^\varphi$ , and so  $\varphi$  is a correlation of order 2, and thus a polarity. However, by theorem 4.6, every polarity  $\varphi$  possesses an absolute point  $P$ , i.e. a point  $P$  such that  $P \in P^\varphi$ ; however, this does not occur for the polarity defined above, as for any point  $Q$ ,  $Q^\varphi$  is the axis of the homology with centre  $Q$  and hence  $Q \notin Q^\varphi$ . This contradicts the hypothesis that (1) is false; thus (1) holds.

To prove assertion (2), let  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$  be  $(C_1, l)$ - and  $(C_2, l)$ -homologies respectively ( $C_1 \neq C_2$ ); i.e. let  $l$  be an axis with more than one centre. Let  $C_1 C_2 = m$ , and let  $m \cap l = E$ . For an arbitrary point  $D \in l - \{E\}$ , let  $\alpha$  be a homology with centre  $D$  (by hypothesis  $\alpha$  exists). By lemma 1.6, there exist  $(C_1^\alpha, l^\alpha)$  and  $(C_2^\alpha, l^\alpha)$ -homologies; as  $D \in l$ ,  $l^\alpha = l$  so these are  $(C_1^\alpha, l)$  and  $(C_2^\alpha, l)$ -homologies. As  $l$  does



not have three non-concurrent centres, it follows that  $C_1^\alpha \varepsilon m$  and  $C_2^\alpha \varepsilon m$ ; hence  $(C_1 C_2)^\alpha = C_1^\alpha C_2^\alpha = C_1 C_2$  and  $\alpha$  fixes  $m$ . Hence as  $D \notin m$ , the axis of  $\alpha$  is  $m$ . However,  $D$  was arbitrary on  $\ell - \{E\}$ , so for any  $D \in \ell - \{E\}$  there exists a non-trivial  $(D, m)$ -homology; consequently by theorem 4.4,  $\pi$  is  $(E, m)$ -transitive.

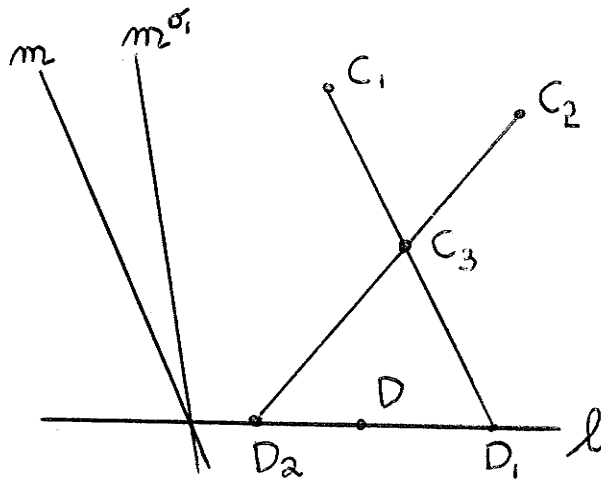
Evidently there are homologies with distinct centres on  $\ell$  and with axis  $m$ , so by reversing the roles of  $\ell$  and  $m$  in the above argument it follows that  $\pi$  is  $(E, \ell)$ -transitive.

Hence by the dual of lemma 1.7,  $\pi$  is the dual of a translation plane with respect to  $E$ , and thence  $G$  is transitive on lines not through  $E$ ; hence, by lemma 1.6, as there is one homology in  $G$  with centre  $E$ , for any line  $q$  of  $\pi$  not through  $E$  there is an  $(E, q)$ -homology in  $G$ . Hence  $E$  has three non-concurrent axes.

To prove assertion (3), suppose that the line has three non-collinear centres  $C_1, C_2, C_3$ . Define  $C_2 C_3 \cap \ell = D_2$  and  $C_1 C_3 \cap \ell = D_1$ . Then  $D_1 \neq D_2$ . By theorem 4.3 the group generated by the  $(C, \ell)$ ,  $(C_2, \ell)$  and  $(C_3, \ell)$ -homologies contain elations  $\sigma_1$  and  $\sigma_2$ , each with axis  $\ell$ , such that  $C_1^{\sigma_1} = C_3$  and  $C_2^{\sigma_2} = C_3$ . Evidently  $\sigma_1$  is a  $(D_1, \ell)$ -elation and  $\sigma_2$  is a  $(D_2, \ell)$ -elation.

Let  $D$  be an arbitrary point of  $\ell$  distinct from

$D_1$  and  $D_2$ . It will be shown that there exists a non-trivial  $(D, \ell)$ -relation. By hypothesis there exists a  $(D, m)$ -homology in  $G$  for some axis  $m$ . As  $D \in \ell$ ,  $m \neq \ell$

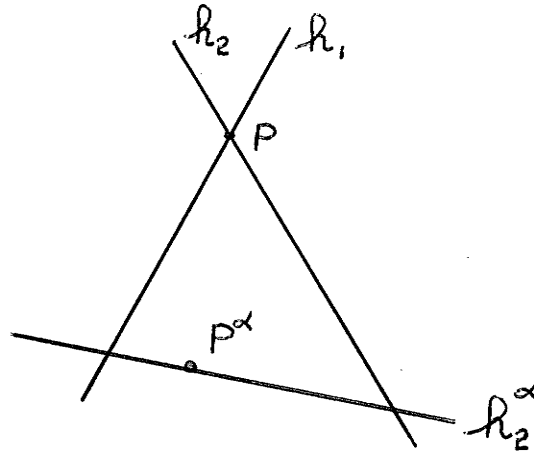


and hence not both  $D_1$  and  $D_2$  are on  $m$ . Without loss of generality it can be assumed that  $D_1 \notin m$ .

As there exists a  $(D, m)$ -homology, by lemma 1.6 there also exists a  $(D^{\sigma_1}, m^{\sigma_1})$ -homology. As  $D \in \ell$ ,  $D^{\sigma_1} = D$  and as  $D_1 \notin m$ ,  $m^{\sigma_1} \neq m$ . Thus there are homologies in  $G$  with centre  $D$  and distinct axes  $m$  and  $m^{\sigma_1}$ . Hence by the dual of theorem 4.3 there exists an elation  $\varphi$  with centre  $D$  such that  $m^\varphi = m^{\sigma_1}$ . As  $\sigma_1$  is an elation with axis  $\ell$ ,  $(m \cap m^{\sigma_1}) \in \ell$ , i.e.  $(m \cap m^\varphi) \in \ell$ . Hence  $\varphi$  has axis  $\ell$  and there exists a non-trivial  $(D, \ell)$ -relation for any  $D \in \ell$  (as  $D$  was arbitrary in  $\ell - \{D_1 \cup D_2\}$  and as there exist  $(D_1, \ell)$ - and  $(D_2, \ell)$ -relations).

The collineation group  $G$  has an action on the set  $\mathcal{L}$  of lines of  $\pi$ . Every orbit of  $\mathcal{L}$  under  $G$  contains three non-concurrent lines; for let  $h_1, h_2 \in \mathcal{L}$  and  $h_1 \in \text{Orb } h_2$ , and define  $h_1 \cap h_2 = P$ . As by the hypotheses of case (c) no point of  $\pi$  is fixed by  $G$ , there exists  $\alpha \in G$  such that  $P^\alpha \neq P$ . Thus  $h_1^\alpha \cap h_2^\alpha \neq P$ . Hence if

$P \notin h_1^\alpha$ ,  $P \notin h_2^\alpha$  and  $h_1, h_2$ , and  $h_2^\alpha$  are three non-concurrent lines in the same orbit under  $G$ ; if  $P \in h_2^\alpha$  then  $h_1, h_2$ , and  $h_1^\alpha$  are the desired non-concurrent lines.



Hence in particular there exist lines  $l_2$  and  $l_3$ , both in  $\text{Orb } l$ , such that  $l, l_2$ , and  $l_3$  are non-concurrent. Thus there exists  $\beta \in G$  such that  $l^\beta = l_2$ , and as there exists a non-trivial  $(D, l)$ -elation for each  $D \in l$ , by lemma 1.6 there exists a non-trivial  $(D^\beta, l^\beta)$ -elation for every  $D \in l$ . Thus for every point  $E \in l_2$  there exists a non-trivial  $(E, l_2)$ -elation; a similar result holds for  $l_3$ .

From this it can be deduced that every line of  $\pi$  is the axis of a non-trivial elation; obviously it suffices to show that any line  $m$  distinct from  $l, l_2$ , and  $l_3$  is such an axis. Such a line  $m$  is by hypothesis the axis of a homology  $\sigma$  with centre  $C$ ; as  $l, l_2$ , and  $l_3$  are non-concurrent, and as every point on each of these three lines is the centre of an elation with that line as axis, it can be assumed without loss of generality that  $C \notin l$ .

Let  $m \cap l = D$ ; then there exists a  $(D, l)$ -elation

$\varphi$ . Then  $m^\varphi = m$  and  $C^\varphi \neq C$ ,

so by lemma 1.6 there

exists a  $(C^\varphi, m)$ -homology.

Thus by theorem 4.3 there

is an elation  $\alpha$  with axis

$m$  such that  $C^\alpha = C^\varphi$ . But

$\equiv D, C, C^\varphi$ ; hence  $\alpha$  has

centre  $D$  and there exists a non-trivial  $(D, m)$ -elation.

As  $m$  was arbitrary, all lines of  $\pi$  are axes of non-trivial elations.

Now define  $l \cap l_2 = E_3$ ,  $l \cap l_3 = E_2$ ,  $l_2 \cap l_3 = E_1$ .

Let  $m$  be an arbitrary line through  $E_2$ . Then by hypo-

theses  $G$  contains a  $(C, m)$ -homology. As  $(l \cap l_3) \in m$ ,  $C$

is not on both  $l$  and  $l_3$ ,

so without loss of gener-

ality suppose  $C \notin l$ . As

$E_2 \in l$  there exists an

$(E_2, l)$ -elation  $\sigma$ ; as

$E_2 \in m$ ,  $m^\sigma = m$  and as  $C \notin l$ ,

$C^\sigma \neq C$ . Hence by lemma 1.6

$G$  contains a  $(C^\sigma, m)$ -homology.

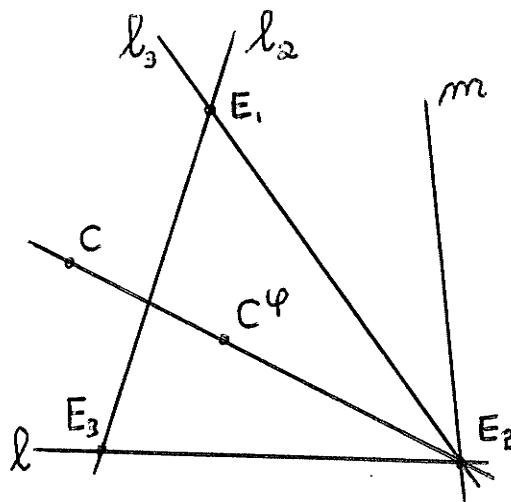
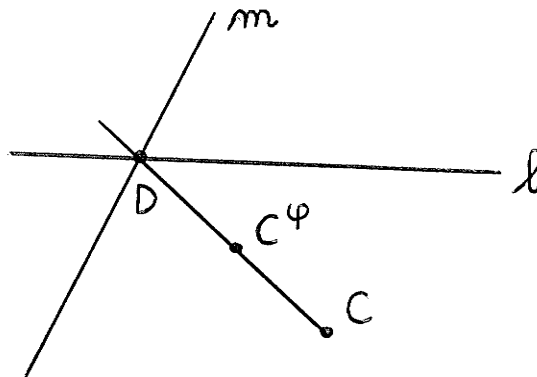
Thus by theorem 4.3 there exists an elation with centre

$C^\sigma \cap m = E_2$  and axis  $m$ . But  $m$  was an arbitrary line

through  $E_2$ , and the argument used for  $E_2$  can with equal

validity be applied to  $E_1$  and  $E_3$ ; consequently there

exists, for an arbitrary line  $m$  through  $E_1$ , a non-trivial



$(E_i, m)$ -elation ( $i = 1, 2, 3$ ). Thus as  $E_1, E_2,$  and  $E_3$  are non-collinear, they are points with the property dual to that obtained for lines  $l, l_2, l_3$ . Hence by dualizing the argument of the previous paragraph it follows that all points of  $\pi$  are centres of non-trivial elations.

Combining this with the fact that all lines of  $\pi$  are axes of non-trivial elations, it follows at once from the corollary of theorem 5.3 that  $\pi$  is Desarguesian. Hence assertion (3) holds.

The conclusion of case (c) is proved as follows: by assertion (1), either a point of  $\pi$  has more than one axis or a line of  $\pi$  has more than one centre. If the latter holds, suppose that a line of  $\pi$  has three non-collinear centres. Then by assertion (3),  $\pi$  is Desarguesian. If no line of  $\pi$  has three non-collinear centres, by assertion (2) some point of  $\pi$  has three non-concurrent axes and by the dual of assertion (3),  $\pi$  is again Desarguesian.

If a line of  $\pi$  has more than one centre, then the above argument can be dualized to obtain again that  $\pi$  is Desarguesian. In all cases, by the corollary of theorem 5.3  $G$  contains the little projective group.

To show that the situation treated in case (a) of theorem 5.4 can arise, let  $\pi$  be a projective plane and  $G$  the group of all collineations of  $\pi$  fixing a line of  $\pi$ . Co-ordinatize  $\pi$  by choosing  $l$  to be the line at

infinity , and pick any affine point to be the origin. Further suppose that the ternary ring  $R$  of  $\pi$  turns out to be a distributive quasifield ; i.e. addition in  $R$  is an abelian group, multiplication in  $R - \{0\}$  is a loop, and both distributive laws hold. Then consider the mapping  $\sigma$  of points and lines of  $\pi$  defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (x,y)^\sigma &= (-x,-y) & [m,b]^\sigma &= [m,-b] \\ (m)^\sigma &= (m) & [x]^\sigma &= [-x] \\ (\infty)^\sigma &= (\infty) & [\infty]^\sigma &= [\infty]. \end{aligned}$$

Then  $\sigma$  is a one-to-one mapping (as inverses are unique). Using lemmas 2.2 and 2.3 and the fact that  $R$  is a distributive quasifield, it can easily be verified that  $\sigma$  preserves incidence and hence is a collineation. As  $\sigma$  fixes  $\ell$ ,  $\sigma \in G$ . But the origin  $O$  was arbitrary, and by theorems 2.3 and 2.4 the fact that  $R$  is a distributive quasifield is independent of what affine point has been chosen to be the origin; hence an  $(O, \ell)$ -homology  $\sigma$  can be defined as above for every affine point  $O$ . Thus every affine point is the centre of a non-trivial homology (assuming that  $R$  does not have characteristic 2).

Next consider the mapping  $\tau$  defined by

$$\begin{aligned} (x,y)^\tau &= (x,-y) & [m,b]^\tau &= [-m,-b] \\ (m)^\tau &= (-m) & [x]^\tau &= [x] \\ (\infty)^\tau &= (\infty) & [\infty]^\tau &= [\infty]. \end{aligned}$$

Then  $\tau$  is a  $(V, OU)$ -homology (that  $\tau$  preserves incidence is again easily verified by employing the algebraic laws at our disposal), so  $G$  possesses a homology with centre  $V$ .



Finally, consider the mapping  $\alpha$  of  $\pi$  defined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} (x,y)^\alpha &= (-x,y) & [m,b]^\alpha &= [-m,b] \\ (m)^\alpha &= (-m) & [x]^\alpha &= [-x] \\ (\infty)^\alpha &= (\infty) & [\infty]^\alpha &= [\infty]. \end{aligned}$$

It is easily verified that  $\alpha$  is a  $(U,OV)$ -homology. Since by theorem 2.4  $\pi$  is  $(V,OV)$ -transitive with respect to  $G$  (as  $R$  is a distributive quasifield), for every point  $P \in [\infty]$ ,  $P \neq V$ , there will be a non-trivial  $(V,OV)$ -elation mapping  $U$  onto  $P$ . Thus by lemma 1.6 there will be a non-trivial homology with centre  $P$ . Thus every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of some non-trivial homology. As in general a finite distributive quasifield is not a field,  $\pi$  will be non-Desarguesian and yet satisfy the hypotheses of theorem 5.4, case (a).

Theorem 5.5 (Wagner (||)) Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane. Let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  which, considered as a permutation group on the points of  $\pi$ , is transitive. Then if  $G$  contains a non-trivial central collineation  $\sigma$ ,  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

Proof: It follows from the hypotheses and from theorem 4.5 that  $G$ , considered as a permutation group on the set of lines of  $\pi$ , is transitive on these lines. Let  $\sigma$  have centre  $C$  and axis  $\ell$ . There are two cases.

Case (1): If  $\sigma$  is an elation, let  $D$  be an arbitrary

point of  $\pi$ . As  $G$  is transitive on points, there exists  $\varphi \in G$  such that  $C^\varphi = D$ . Thus by lemma 1.6,  $\varphi^{-1}\sigma\varphi$  is a  $(D, \ell^\varphi)$ -elation and hence every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of an elation. As  $G$  is transitive on lines of  $\pi$ , the dual argument gives that every line of  $\pi$  is the axis of an elation. Thus by the corollary of theorem 5.3,  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group.

Case (2): If  $\sigma$  is a homology, an argument completely analogous to that used in case (1) gives that every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of a non-trivial homology in  $G$  and every line is the axis of some non-trivial homology in  $G$ . As  $G$  is transitive on points and lines it fixes no point nor line of  $\pi$ ; hence case (c) of theorem 5.4 applies and  $\pi$  is Desarguesian with  $G$  containing the little projective group of  $\pi$ .

Corollary Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$  transitive on the points of  $\pi$ . If  $n$  is not a square and if  $G$  has even order, then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$  as a subgroup.

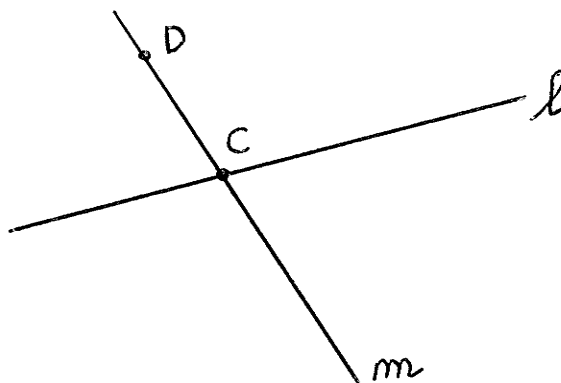
Proof: As  $|G|$  is even, it contains an element  $\sigma$  of order 2. As  $n$  is not a square, by theorem 4.7  $\sigma$  is a central collineation. Thus the hypotheses of theorem 5.5 are satisfied and the conclusions follow immediately.

The following theorem (theorem 5.6) is an extension of the result of the corollary to theorem 5.3. The method is due to Piper.

Lemma 5.7 (Piper (10)) If every point of a finite projective plane  $\pi$  is the centre of an elation of  $\pi$ , then all elations of  $\pi$  have the same prime order.

Proof: Let  $C$  be an arbitrary point of  $\pi$  and let  $C$  be the centre of an elation with axis  $l$ . Let  $D$  be an arbitrary point not on  $l$ , and let  $D$  be the centre of an elation with axis  $m$ .

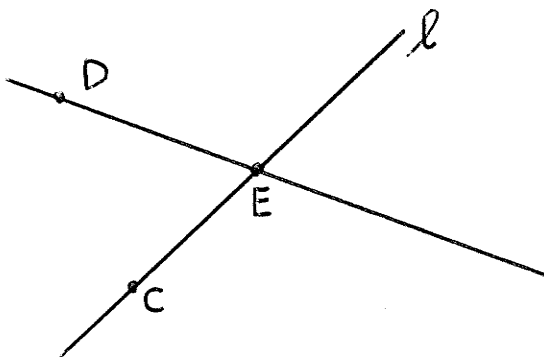
There are two possibilities; either  $C = l \cap m$  or  $C \neq l \cap m$ .



If  $C = l \cap m$ , then

there is a  $(C, m)$ -elation in  $\pi$  by theorem 5.3. Thus as  $C \neq D$ , by the corollary of theorem 1.1, the  $(C, m)$  and  $(C, l)$ -elations have the same prime order  $p$ . By theorem 1.1 the  $(C, m)$  and  $(D, m)$ -elations have the same prime order  $p$ ; hence the  $(C, l)$ -elation and the  $(D, m)$ -elation have the same prime order  $p$ .

If  $l \cap m = E \neq C$ , then by theorem 5.3, as  $E$  is the centre of an elation and  $l$  is the axis of one, there is a non-trivial  $(E, l)$ -elation.



By theorem 1.1 the  $(E, \mathcal{L})$  and  $(C, \mathcal{L})$ -relations have the same prime order  $p$ . By theorem 5.3 there is a non-trivial  $(E, m)$ -relation; by theorem 1.1 and its corollary this has the same prime order as the  $(E, \mathcal{L})$ -relation and the  $(D, m)$ -relation. Hence again the  $(C, \mathcal{L})$ -relation and the  $(D, m)$ -relation have the same prime order. Consequently the  $(C, \mathcal{L})$ -relation and the  $(D, m)$ -relation have the same prime order.

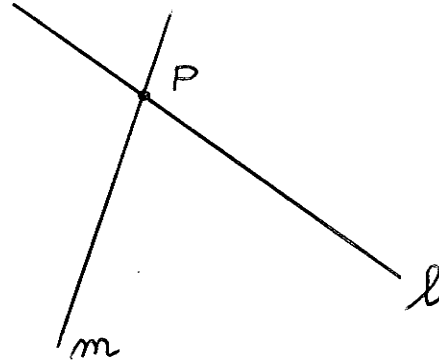
If  $D \in \mathcal{L}$ , then if there is a  $(D, m)$ -relation, by theorem 5.3 there exists a  $(D, \mathcal{L})$ -relation and repeated use of theorem 1.1 gives that the  $(C, \mathcal{L})$  and  $(D, m)$ -relations have the same prime order. Hence as all possible cases have been discussed, the lemma is proved.

Theorem 5.6 (Piper (10)) Let  $G$  be a collineation group of a finite projective plane of order  $n$ . If for every point of  $\pi$  there exists a non-trivial elation in  $G$  with that point as centre, then one of the following occurs:

(1)  $G$  fixes a point  $P$  of  $\pi$ ; then  $\pi$  is the dual of a translation plane with  $G$  containing the group of all elations with centre  $P$ . Also  $G$  is transitive on flags of  $\pi$  whose lines do not pass through  $P$ .

(2)  $G$  does not fix a point of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group as a subgroup.

Proof: Let  $\ell$  be an arbitrary line of  $\pi$  with the property that for any point  $P_i \in \ell$ , there exists a non-trivial  $(P_i, m)$ -elation  $\sigma_i \in G$ , where  $m \neq \ell$ . As the hypotheses of lemma 5.3 are satisfied,  $\{\sigma_i \mid i = 1, \dots, (n+1)\}$  is a set of elations all of which have the same prime order. They generate a group which has an action on the points of  $\ell$  and which satisfies the hypotheses of lemma 4.4. Hence this group is transitive on the points of  $\ell$ , and consequently  $G$  is also.



As every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of some non-trivial elation, any line of  $\pi$  that is not an axis of some elation in  $G$  will satisfy the hypotheses on  $\ell$  in the previous paragraph; as non-axes intersect it follows that  $G$  is transitive on the points on non-axes of  $\pi$ .

Now suppose that the group  $G$  is not transitive on the points of  $\pi$ . Then there exist distinct points  $P_1$  and  $P_2$  of  $\pi$  such that no element of  $G$  maps  $P_1$  onto  $P_2$ . Thus  $G$  is not transitive on the points of  $P_1P_2 = \ell$ ; consequently from the above discussion it follows that there must be a point  $P \in \ell$  such that any elation with centre  $P$  has axis  $\ell$ . Consequently all lines through  $P$  other than  $\ell$  are non-axes, and so by the previous remarks,  $G$  is

transitive on the points of all lines through  $P$  (except  $\ell$ ). It follows that  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ .

Let  $Q$  be a point of  $\ell - \{P\}$  and suppose that there exists  $\sigma \in G$  such that  $Q^\sigma \notin \ell$ . Then  $PQ^\sigma$  is a non-axis, and hence there exists  $\varphi \in G$  such that  $(Q^\sigma)^\varphi = P$ . Hence  $\sigma\varphi$  maps  $Q$  into  $P$ ; thus if all points of  $\ell - \{P\}$  could be mapped into a point not on  $\ell$  by some element of  $G$ ,  $G$  would be transitive on the points of  $\ell$ , in contradiction to the assumption. Thus there must exist a point  $O \in \ell$  such that  $O^g \in \ell$  for all  $g \in G$ ; i.e.  $\text{Orb } O \subseteq \{\ell\}$ .

Let  $D$  be any point of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ . Then by hypothesis there exists a non-trivial elation  $\alpha \in G$  with centre  $D$  and axis  $m$ , say. Then  $O^\alpha \in OD$ , but  $O^\alpha \in \ell$  from the preceding paragraph, and hence  $O^\alpha = OD \cap \ell = O$ . Thus  $\alpha$  fixes  $O$  and hence  $m = OD$ . Consequently any point  $D$  of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$  is the centre of a non-trivial  $(D, OD)$ -elation, and there exists no elation in  $G$  with centre  $D \notin \ell$  and axis  $\neq OD$ . Thus the point  $D$  and the line  $OD$  have precisely the properties ascribed to the point  $P$  and the line  $\ell$  respectively. It then follows by the line of argument used above that  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\pi - \{OD\}$ . As  $G$  is also transitive on the points of  $\pi - \{\ell\}$ , it is transitive on the points of  $\pi - \{O\}$ . By the dual of theorem 5.2, it immediately follows that  $\pi$  is the dual of a translation plane with respect to the point

0, and that  $G$  contains the group of all elations with centre 0.

The group  $G$ , considered as a permutation group on the set  $\mathcal{L}$  of lines of  $\pi$ , partitions  $\mathcal{L}$  into two orbits, namely the set  $T_1$  of lines through 0 and the set  $T_2$  of lines not through 0. (This follows at once from the fact that  $G$  fixes 0 and is transitive on the points of  $\pi - \{0\}$ .) Now  $|T_1| = n+1$  and  $|T_2| = n^2$ , so  $|T_1|$  and  $|T_2|$  are relatively prime. Let  $(C_1, l_1)$  and  $(C_2, l_2)$  be flags with  $0 \notin l_1$ ,  $0 \notin l_2$ . By lemma 4.2, there exists  $g_1 \in G$  such that  $(OC_1)^{g_1} = OC_1$  and  $l_1^{g_1} = l_2$ . Thus  $C_1^{g_1} = (OC_1 \cap l_1)^{g_1} = OC_1 \cap l_2$ . Similarly there exists  $g_2 \in G$  such that

$$l_2^{g_2} = l_2 \text{ and}$$

$$(OC_1)^{g_2} = OC_2. \text{ Then}$$

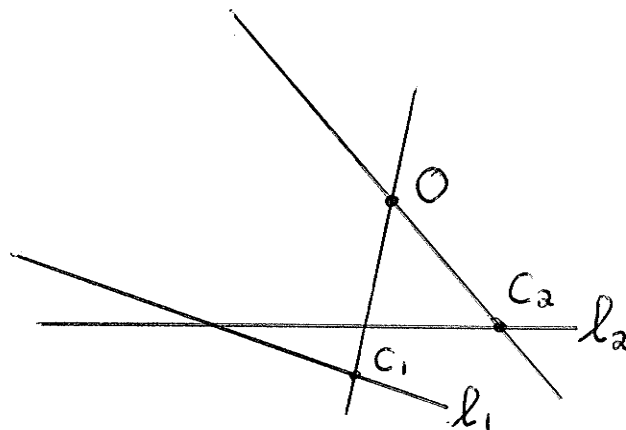
$$l_1^{g_1 g_2} = l_2 \text{ and}$$

$$C_1^{g_1 g_2} = (OC_1 \cap l_2)^{g_2} \\ = OC_2 \cap l_2 = C_2. \text{ Hence}$$

$$(C_1, l_1)^{g_1 g_2} = (C_2, l_2)$$

and  $G$  is transitive on flags with axes not through 0.

Thus if  $G$  is not transitive on the points of  $\pi$ ,  $\pi$  is the dual of a translation plane. If  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\pi$ , since it also contains elations it immediately follows by theorem 5.5 that  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and that  $G$  contains the little projective group of  $\pi$ .



Lemma 5.8 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and  $G$  a collineation group of  $\pi$ . Suppose that for any flag in  $\pi$  there exists an elation in  $G$  fixing that flag. Then all elations in  $G$  have the same prime order.

Proof: If a flag  $(P, \ell)$  is fixed by an elation, then either  $P$  is the centre of the elation or  $\ell$  is the axis of the elation. Hence if a line  $\ell$  is not an axis of an elation in  $G$ , every point on  $\ell$  is the centre of some elation of  $G$ . The dual situation of course also holds.

Suppose that  $G$  contains elations of order  $p_1, \dots, p_k$ . As conjugation does not affect the order of a group element, by lemma 1.6  $G$  will have an action on the set of centres of elations of given prime order  $p_i$  ( $i = 1, \dots, k$ ), and dually on the corresponding sets of axes. Let  $\ell$  be a non-axis (if there is no such  $\ell$  the theorem immediately holds by the dual of lemma 5.7). Then every point on  $\ell$  is a centre, so if there are  $n_i$  centres of elations of order  $p_i$  ( $i = 1$  to  $k$ ), it follows that

$$\sum_{i=1}^k n_i = n+1. \quad \dots (1)$$

Without loss of generality suppose that  $n_1 \leq n_j$ ,  $j = 2$  to  $k$ . Let  $m$  be an axis through a centre  $P_1$  of an elation of order  $p_1$  ( $P_1 \in \ell$ ). (Henceforth such a centre will be referred to as a  $p_1$ -centre.) Let  $m$  have  $k_1$   $p_1$ -centres



and  $k_2$  non-centres. By theorem 1.1 all elations with axis  $m$  will have order  $p_1$ , so

$$k_1 + k_2 = n + 1. \quad \dots (2)$$

Let  $Q$  be a non-centre on  $m$ . (Such a  $Q \notin \ell$  must exist; for otherwise every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of a non-trivial elation and the conclusion follows from lemma 5.7.) Then every line joining  $Q$  to a  $p_1$ -centre on  $\ell$  is a  $p_1$ -axis; for every line through a non-centre is an axis, and by theorems 5.3 and 1.1, any elation with such an axis will be a  $p_1$ -elation. No other line through  $Q$  is a  $p_1$ -axis, for it meets  $\ell$  at a point that is not a  $p_1$ -centre and hence cannot be a  $p_1$ -axis by the above argument. Hence there are  $n_1$   $p_1$ -axes through  $Q$ . Now each elation with axis  $m$  has an action on the  $(n_1 - 1)$   $p_1$ -axes through  $Q$  (excluding  $m$ ). Let  $\bar{\ell}$  be a  $p_1$ -axis through  $Q$  ( $\bar{\ell} \neq m$ ). If  $\alpha_i$  and  $\alpha_j$  are elations with axis  $m$  ( $i \neq j$ ,  $i, j \in \{1, \dots, k\}$ ), then  $\bar{\ell}^{\alpha_i} = \bar{\ell}^{\alpha_j} \Rightarrow \bar{\ell}^{\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}} = \bar{\ell}$ , i.e. the non-trivial elation  $\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}$  with axis  $m$  fixes the line  $\bar{\ell}$  through a non-centre of  $Q$ . This is a contradiction, and hence  $\bar{\ell}^{\alpha_i} = \bar{\ell}^{\alpha_j} \Rightarrow \alpha_i = \alpha_j$ , so there are at least as many  $p_1$ -axes through  $Q$  (excluding  $\bar{\ell}$  and  $m$ ), and hence  $p_1$ -centres on  $\ell$ , excluding two, as there are centres of elations with axis  $m$ . Thus

$$k_1 < n_1 - 1. \quad \dots (3)$$

Let  $R$  be the centre of a  $p_j$  elation,  $R \in \ell$  and  $j \geq 2$ . By theorem 1.1 and the above remarks, the  $k_2$  lines joining  $R$  to non-centres of  $m$  are  $p_j$ -axes.

Let this set of  $p_j$ -axes be denoted

$\{m_i \mid i = 1, \dots, k_2\}$ . By

theorem 5.3 there exists an  $(R, m_i)$ -elation

$\alpha_i$  ( $i=1, \dots, k_2$ ). If

$i, j \in \{1, \dots, k_2\}$ ,  $i \neq j$ , and  $P_1^{\alpha_i} = P_1^{\alpha_j}$ , then

$P_1^{\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}} = P_1$ , so as  $\alpha_i \alpha_j^{-1}$  is an elation with centre

$R$  it must have axis  $\ell$ , contradicting the hypothesis

that  $\ell$  is a non-axis. Thus  $i \neq j \Rightarrow P_1^{\alpha_i} \neq P_1^{\alpha_j}$ , so

as each  $\alpha_i$  has an action on  $p_1$ -centres, the number of

$p_1$ -centres on  $\ell$  (excluding  $P_1$ ) is at least as large as

$k_2$ ;

i.e.  $n_1 - 1 \geq k_2$ . ..... (4)

Thus by equations (2), (3) and (4)

$$n+1 = k_1 + k_2 < 2n_1 - 1. \quad \text{..... (5)}$$

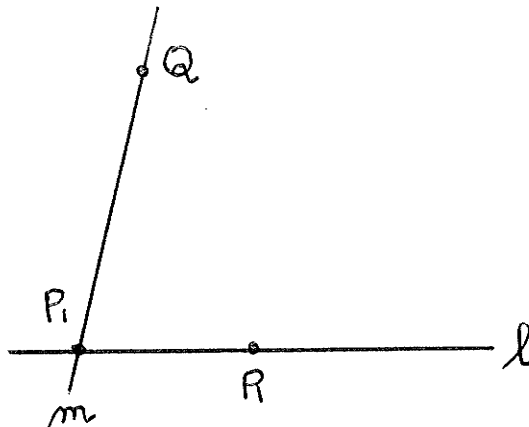
As  $n_1 \leq n_j$ ,  $j = 1, \dots, k$ , it follows from (1) that

$$2n_1 \leq \sum_{i=1}^k n_i = n+1.$$

This contradicts equation (5). Hence the assumption

that there can exist elations with different prime

orders is false and the lemma holds.



Theorem 5.7 Let  $\pi$  be a finite projective plane of order  $n$  and let  $G$  be a collineation group of  $\pi$ . Suppose that for every flag of  $\pi$  there is an elation in  $G$  fixing that flag. Then one of the following must hold:

(i)  $G$  fixes a point of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is the dual of a translation plane and  $G$  contains the dual of the translation group.

(ii)  $G$  fixes a line of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is a translation plane and  $G$  contains the translation group.

(iii)  $G$  fixes neither a point nor a line of  $\pi$ . Then  $\pi$  is Desarguesian. If  $n \neq 4$ ,  $G$  contains the group of all elations of  $\pi$ .

Proof: As remarked in lemma 5.8, under the hypotheses of the theorem any point on a line that is not an axis of an elation in  $G$  is the centre of some elation in  $G$ . There are now three cases.

Case I:  $G$  fixes a point of  $\pi$ .

Let the point be  $O$ . Hence all axes of elations in  $G$  pass through  $O$ . Let  $P$  be an arbitrary point of  $\pi - \{O\}$ , and let  $\ell$  be any line through  $P$  (except  $OP$ ). Then  $G$  possesses an elation fixing the flag  $(P, \ell)$ . As  $\ell$  is not the axis,  $P$  must be the centre. As all axes pass through  $O$ ,  $OP$  is the axis. Hence any point  $P \in \pi - \{O\}$  is the centre of a  $(P, OP)$ -elation. Thus for any line  $m$  through  $O$  and any point  $P \in m - \{O\}$ , there is a

non-trivial  $(P,m)$ -elation; by lemma 1.11 there also exists an  $(O,m)$ -elation. Hence every point of  $\pi$  is the centre of a non-trivial elation. Hence by theorem 5.6, case (1),  $\pi$  is the dual of a translation plane, and  $G$  contains the dual of the translation group.

Case II:  $G$  fixes a line of  $\pi$ . The dual of the argument of case I gives the duals of its conclusions.

Case III:  $G$  fixes neither a point nor a line of  $\pi$ .

If all points of  $\pi$  are centres of non-trivial elations of  $G$ , or if all lines of  $\pi$  are axes of non-trivial elations of  $G$ , then by theorem 5.6 or its dual  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the group of all elations of  $\pi$ . Hence assume that there exist both a point of  $\pi$  that is not the centre of an elation in  $G$  and a line of  $\pi$  that is not the axis of an elation in  $G$ .

Now  $G$  is transitive on the points of non-axes; for if  $\ell$  is a non-axis, all points of  $\ell$  are centres of elations with axis  $\neq \ell$ . By lemma 5.8 all such elations are of the same prime order  $p$ . Now the subgroup of  $G$  fixing  $\ell$  (denoted  $G_\ell$ ) has an action on the points of  $\ell$ , and  $P \in \ell \Rightarrow$  there exists  $\sigma \in G_\ell$  ( $\sigma$  of order  $p$ ) such that  $P^\sigma = P$  and  $\sigma$  fixes no other point of  $\ell$ . Hence by lemma 4.4  $G_\ell$ , and hence  $G$ , is transitive on points of  $\ell$ . As non-axes intersect,  $G$  is transitive on all points of  $\pi$  that lie on some non-axis. Dually  $G$  is transitive on all lines of  $\pi$  that pass

through some non-centre.

Secondly, every point  $P$  of  $\pi$  has at least two axes through it. This is obviously true if  $P$  is a non-centre, as all lines through non-centres are axes; hence suppose  $P$  is a centre with precisely one axis through it. Then by the previous paragraph  $G$  maps  $P$  onto any point of  $\pi - \{P\}$ . If, for every  $Q \in \ell$ , there exists  $\alpha \in G$  such that  $Q^\alpha \notin \ell$ , it immediately follows that  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $\pi$ , which by lemma 1.6 contradicts the fact that both centres and non-centres of elations of  $G$  exist in  $\pi$ . Thus there exists  $Q \in \ell$  such that  $Q^\alpha \in \ell$  for all  $\alpha \in G$ . But if there exist two such points  $Q_1$  and  $Q_2$  on  $\ell$ , then  $\ell^g = (Q_1 Q_2)^g = \ell$  for all  $g \in G$  and  $G$  fixes  $\ell$ , contrary to the hypotheses of case III. If there exists only one such  $Q \in \ell$ , it is evident that  $Q$  is fixed by  $G$ , again in contradiction to the hypotheses of case III. Thus every point of  $\pi$  has at least two axes through it. Dually, every line of  $\pi$  has at least two centres on it.

Thirdly,  $G$  is transitive on centres of  $\pi$  and on axes of  $\pi$ ; for let  $P$  and  $Q$  be distinct centres. If the line  $PQ$  is a non-axis then previously used arguments show that  $G$  is transitive on the points of  $PQ$ . If however the line  $PQ = \ell$  is an axis, one may argue as follows; by the preceding paragraph there is an

axis  $m$  through  $P$ ,  $m \neq \ell$ , and by theorem 5.3 there is thus a  $(P,m)$ -relation  $\varphi \in G$ . Such a  $\varphi$  can be found for every centre  $P \in \ell$ , and by lemma 5.8 all such relations  $\varphi$  are of the same prime order. The group  $H$  that they generate has an action on the centres of  $\ell$  (as centres map into centres under collineations, and as  $H$  fixes  $\ell$ ), so as the hypotheses of lemma 4.4 have been verified,  $H$ , and hence  $G$ , is transitive on the centres of  $\ell$ . Thus in any case there is a  $\varphi \in G$  such that  $P^\varphi = Q$ , and thus  $G$  is transitive on centres of  $\pi$ . Dually  $G$  is transitive on axes of  $\pi$ .

Fourthly,  $G$  is transitive on non-centres of  $\pi$  and on non-axes of  $\pi$ ; for let  $\ell$  be an axis and  $P$  a centre on  $\ell$ . Then as seen earlier, there is an axis  $m$  through  $P$ ,  $m \neq \ell$ , and by theorem 5.3 a  $(P,m)$ -relation  $\alpha$ . Let  $A$  be the group generated by  $\alpha$ ; then  $A$  has prime order  $p$ , and the centres on  $\ell$  (excluding  $P$ ) are permuted amongst themselves by  $A$ . Thus the non-centres on  $\ell$  are partitioned into disjoint orbits each of length  $p$  by the action of  $A$ . Hence there are  $kp$  non-centres on  $\ell$  for some integer  $k$ , and as  $G$  is transitive on axes,  $kp$  non-centres on every axis of  $\pi$ . Let  $Q$  be an arbitrary non-centre of  $\pi$ ; then every line through  $Q$  is an axis, and every non-centre of  $\pi$  is on one of these  $(n+1)$  lines. Hence the total number  $N$  of non-centres of  $\pi$  is

$$N = (n+1)(kp-1)+1 = (n+1)kp-n. \quad \dots (*)$$

Assume that there exists more than one orbit of non-centres in  $\pi$  under the action of  $G$ . Let  $Q$  and  $R$  lie in distinct orbits of non-centres, and let  $S_Q$  be the number of points in  $\text{Orb } Q$  that are also on  $QR$ . As every line through  $R$  is an axis and as  $G$  is transitive on axes, by lemma 1.6 the number of points in  $\text{Orb } Q$  of any line through  $R$  is  $S_Q$ . Thus as  $R \notin \text{Orb } Q$ ,

$$|\text{Orb } Q| = (n+1)S_Q.$$

As  $Q$  was arbitrary, all orbits of non-centres are of order divisible by  $(n+1)$ ; i.e.  $N = r(n+1)$  for some integer  $r$ . Thus from equation (\*),

$$r(n+1) = (n+1)kp-n.$$

The left-hand side is divisible by  $(n+1)$  but the right-hand side is not. This contradiction implies that all non-centres are in the same orbit under  $G$ , and so  $G$  is transitive on non-centres of  $\pi$ . Dually  $G$  is transitive on non-axes of  $\pi$ .

Hence  $G$  splits the points of  $\pi$  into two orbits, the centres and the non-centres; dually it splits the lines into two orbits, the axes and the non-axes. Thus each axis has the same number of centres, and each centre has the same number of axes.

If there are  $kp$  non-centres on an axis, then there are  $\frac{n}{k}kp$  non-axes through a centre; for let  $C$  be a centre and let  $t$  be the number of axes through it. On each such axis there are  $kp$  non-centres, and this accounts for

all the non-centres of  $\pi$ ; hence  $\pi$  has  $tkp$  non-centres.

From equation (\*), it follows that

$$tkp = (n+1)kp - n.$$

Thus  $n+1-t = n/kp$ .

As the number of non-axes through a centre is  $(n+1)-t$ , it is evident that there are  $n/kp$  non-axes through a centre.

Now let  $\ell$  be an arbitrary axis and  $P$  an arbitrary centre on  $\ell$ . As  $G$  is transitive on centres, the group  $G_{P,\ell}$  of elations with centre  $P$  and axis  $\ell$  has the same prime power order  $p^\alpha$  for every  $P \in \ell$  (by theorem 1.1, as there is more than one centre on an axis). Let  $r$  be the number of axes through a centre and  $\bar{r}$  the number of centres on an axis. Then as seen before, an elation with centre  $P$  and axis  $\neq \ell$  partitions the centres of  $\ell - \{P\}$  into orbits each of length  $p$ . Hence

$$\bar{r} = 1 + \bar{u}p$$

for some integer  $\bar{u}$ . Dually  $r = 1 + up$  for some integer  $u$ .

Without loss of generality assume that  $\bar{r} \geq r$ . Hence  $\bar{u} \geq u$ .

Now let  $H_\ell$  denote the group of all elations with axis  $\ell$ ,

and  $H_{P,\ell}$  the group of all elations with centre  $P$  and axis  $\ell$ . Then  $H_\ell = \bigcup_{P \in \ell} H_{P,\ell}$ , and distinct groups

$H_{P_1,\ell}$  and  $H_{P_2,\ell}$  have only the identity in common;

hence  $|H_\ell| = (1 + \bar{u}p)(p^\alpha - 1) + 1$ .

By theorem 1.1,  $H_\ell$  is a  $p$ -group of order  $p^\beta$ , say;

hence

$$p^\beta = (\bar{u}p + 1)(p^\alpha - 1) + 1. \quad \dots (1)$$



Let  $m$  be an axis through  $P$  ( $m \neq \ell$ ). Then as  $H_\ell$  has an action on the axes through  $P$  (excepting  $\ell$ ) and as the stabilizer of  $m$  is  $H_{P,\ell}$ , by lemma 4.1,

$$|\text{Orb}_{H_\ell} m| |H_{P,\ell}| = |H_\ell|. \quad \dots (2)$$

Evidently  $H_\ell$  splits the axes through  $P$  (distinct from  $\ell$ ) into  $s$  orbits of equal length, so equation (2) becomes

$$\frac{up}{s} (p^\alpha) = (\bar{u}p+1)(p^\alpha-1)+1$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad \frac{up^{\alpha+1}}{s} = \bar{u}p(p^\alpha-1)+p^\alpha = p^\beta. \quad \dots (3)$$

As  $\bar{u} \geq u$  by assumption, it follows that

$$\frac{up^{\alpha+1}}{s} \geq up(p^\alpha-1)+p^\alpha,$$

$$up^{\alpha+1} \geq \text{sup}^{\alpha+1} - \text{sup} + sp^\alpha,$$

$$up(p^\alpha+s) \geq sp^\alpha(up+1).$$

$$\text{Thus} \quad p^{\alpha+s} \geq sp^\alpha$$

and so  $s = 1$  since  $s \geq 1$ .

Equation (3) becomes

$$u = p^{\beta-\alpha-1}. \quad \dots (4)$$

Let  $H_P$  be the group of all elations with centre  $P$ . Then by the dual of theorem 1.1,  $|H_P| = P^\gamma$ . By the dual of the above argument, the analogue of equation (2) is obtained, namely

$$p^\gamma = (up+1)(p^\alpha-1)+1. \quad \dots (5)$$

As  $\bar{u} \geq u$ , it follows by comparison with equation (1) that  $\gamma \leq \beta$ . Combining equations (4) and (5) gives

$$p^\gamma = (p^{\beta-\alpha}+1)(p^\alpha-1)+1,$$

i.e. 
$$p^\beta + p^\alpha - p^{\beta-\alpha} = p^\gamma \quad \dots\dots (6)$$

If  $\beta < 2\alpha$ , dividing equation (6) by  $p^{\beta-\alpha}$  gives

$$p^\alpha + p^{2\alpha-\beta} - 1 = p^{\gamma+\alpha-\beta}$$

and as  $\gamma+2 > 2\alpha > \beta$ ,  $p$  divides the right-hand side but not the left-hand side, which is impossible.

If  $\beta > 2\alpha$ , dividing equation (6) by  $p^\alpha$  gives

$$p^{\beta-\alpha} + 1 - p^{\beta-2\alpha} = p^{\gamma-\alpha}$$

and as  $\gamma > \alpha$ ,  $p$  divides the right-hand side but not the left-hand side, which is again impossible. Hence

$$\beta = 2\alpha.$$

Now equation (2) applies in general whether  $m$  is an axis or not; hence

$$|\text{Orb}_{H_\ell} m| p^\alpha = p^{2\alpha},$$

and so 
$$|\text{Orb}_{H_\ell} m| = p^\alpha.$$

Hence the  $n$  lines through  $P$  (excluding  $\ell$ ) can be partitioned into  $v$  orbits of length  $p^\alpha$ ; consequently  $vp^\alpha = n$  for some integer  $v$ . As  $G$  is transitive on axes and non-axes and as there exist both axes and non-axes amongst the  $n$  lines through  $P$  (excepting  $\ell$ ),  $v \neq 1$  as otherwise  $H_\ell$  would map axes into non-axes.

Assuming as before that there are  $kp$  non-centres on an axis, and thus  $n/kp$  non-axes through a centre, it follows that  $\bar{r} = n+1-kp$ . The assumption that  $\bar{r} \geq r$  is equivalent to the assumption that  $kp \leq \sqrt{n}$ . Then equation (1) can be rewritten as

$$p^\beta = (n+1-kp)(p^\alpha-1)+1.$$

Substituting  $vp^\alpha = n$  and  $p^\beta = p^{2\alpha}$ , this becomes

$$\begin{aligned} p^{2\alpha} &= (vp^{\alpha+1}-kp)(p^\alpha-1)+1 \\ &= vp^{2\alpha}-vp^\alpha+p^\alpha-kp^{\alpha+1}+kp. \end{aligned}$$

But  $kp \leq \sqrt{n} = \sqrt{ap^{\frac{\alpha}{2}}}$  and so

$$p^{2\alpha} \geq vp^{2\alpha}-vp^\alpha+p^\alpha-\sqrt{ap^{\frac{\alpha}{2}}}(p^\alpha-1)$$

i.e.  $vp^\alpha(p^\alpha-1)-p^\alpha(p^\alpha-1)-\sqrt{ap^{\frac{\alpha}{2}}}(p^\alpha-1) \leq 0$ .

As  $p^\alpha-1 > 0$ , this implies that

$$vp^\alpha-p^\alpha-\sqrt{ap^{\frac{\alpha}{2}}} \leq 0.$$

Let  $X^2 = vp^\alpha$ ,  $X > 0$ . Then

$$X^2 - \frac{X^2}{v} - X \leq 0$$

i.e.  $X - \frac{X}{v} - 1 \leq 0$ ,

i.e.  $X \leq \frac{v}{v-1}$ .

If  $v = 2$ , then  $X \leq 2$  and  $p^\alpha \leq 2$ , i.e.  $p = 2$  and  $\alpha = 1$ , and thus  $n = vp^\alpha = 4$ , and planes of order 4 are Desarguesian. If  $v \geq 3$ , then  $X \leq \frac{3}{2}$ , but from the definition of  $X$ ,  $X \geq \sqrt{3p^{\frac{\alpha}{2}}} > \sqrt{3} > \frac{3}{2}$ , and there is a contradiction. Hence unless  $n = 4$ , the assumption that  $\pi$  possesses both non-centres and non-axes is false, and by theorem 5.4 or its dual,  $\pi$  is Desarguesian and  $G$  contains the little projective group as a subgroup.

This completes the proof of the theorem.

The case in which  $n = 4$  will now be considered briefly, and the results of Piper (10) will be summarized. There is but one projective plane  $\pi_4$  of order 4 and it is Desarguesian. There are two collineation groups of  $\pi_4$  such that every flag of  $\pi_4$  is fixed by an elation in the group; one is isomorphic to  $A_4$  and the other to  $S_6$ . There are six points of  $\pi_4$  that are not centres of elations of the group isomorphic to  $A_4$ , and no three of these are collinear.

## BIBLIOGRAPHY

- (1) Andre, J.: Über Perspektivitäten in Endlichen Projektiven Ebenen. Arch. Math. 6, 29-32 (1954).
- (2) Baer, R.: Polarities in Finite Projective Planes. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 52, 77-93 (1946).
- (3) \_\_\_\_: Projectivities with Fixed Points on Every Line of the Plane. Bull. Amer. Math. Soc. 52, 273-286 (1946).
- (4) Gleason, A.M.: Finite Fano Planes. Amer. J. Math. 78, 797-807 (1956).
- (5) Hall, M.: The Theory of Groups. New York, 1959.
- (6) Ostrom, T.G.: Double Transitivity in Finite Projective Planes. Canad. J. Math. 8, 563-567 (1956).
- (7) \_\_\_\_, and Wagner, A.: On Projective and Affine Planes with Transitive Collineation Groups. Math. Z. 71, 186-199 (1959).
- (8) Pickert, G.: Lectures on Projective Planes (mimeographed notes). Saskatoon, 1963.
- (9) \_\_\_\_: Projektive Ebenen. Heidelberg, 1955.

- (10) Piper, F.C.: Elations of Finite Projective Planes.  
Math. Z. 82, 247-258 (1963).
- (11) Wagner, A.: On Perspectivities of Finite Projective Planes. Math. Z. 71, 113-123 (1959).
- (12) \_\_\_\_: A Theorem on Doubly Transitive Permutation Groups. Math. Z. 85, 451-453 (1964).
- (13) \_\_\_\_: On Finite Affine Line Transitive Planes.  
Math. Z. 87, 1-11 (1965).
- (14) Wielandt, H.: Permutation Groups. (Lectures at  
the University of Tübingen, 1954-55).